

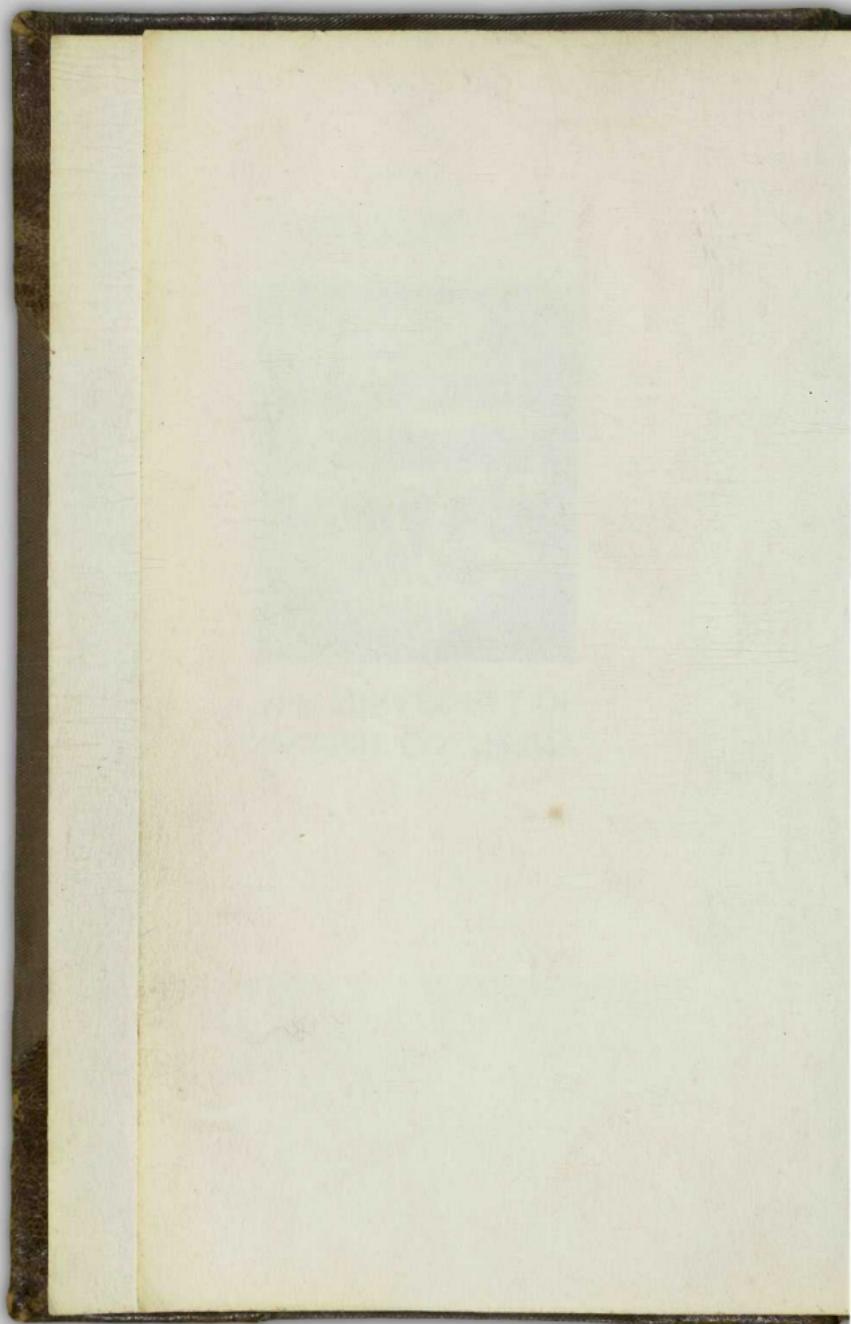
1681 ed £10.10.0. Thorne/48

THE LIBRARY



THE UNIVERSITY OF
BRITISH COLUMBIA

SH 437
CS2
1700
Memb

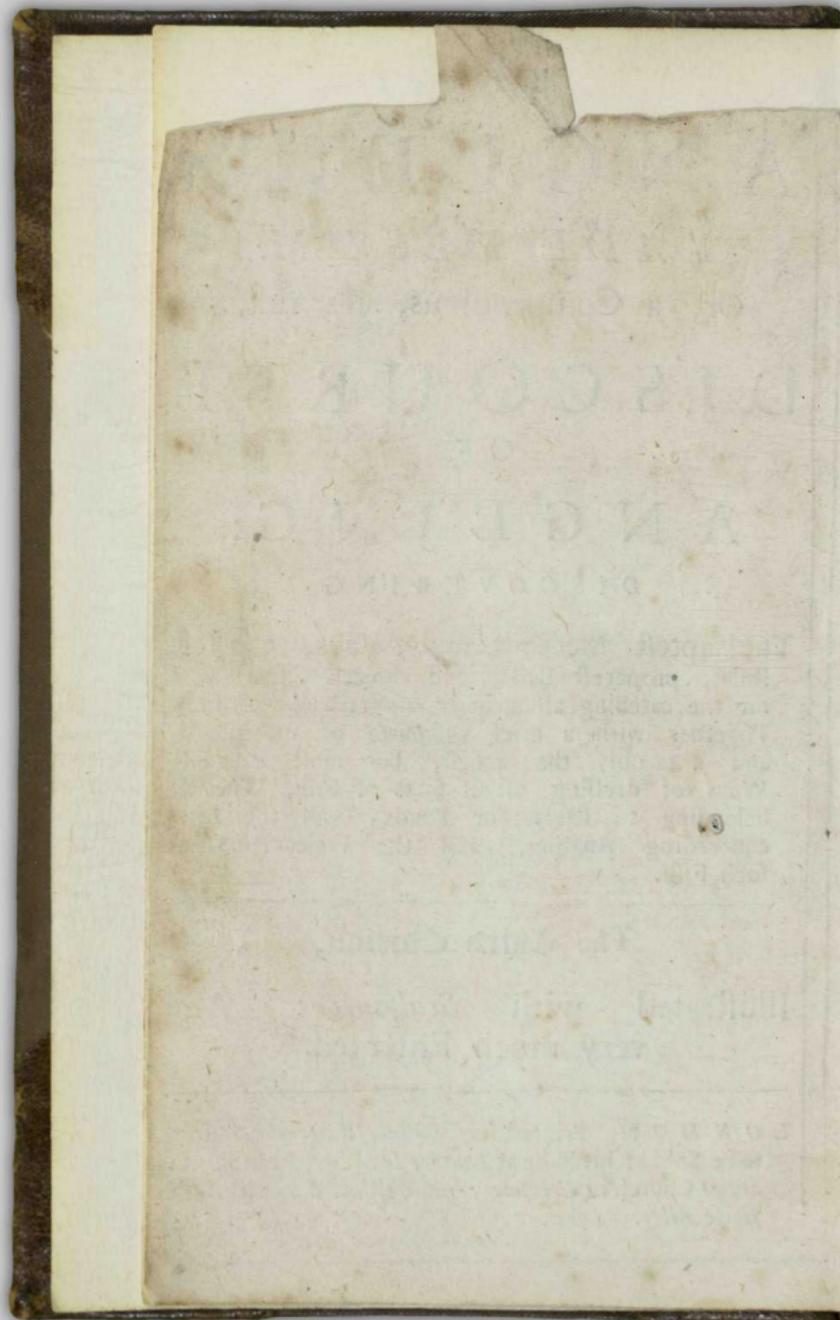


THE
ANGLER'S
VADE MECUM:
Or, a Compendious, yet full,
DISCOURSE
Robt. OF *Bowyer.*
ANGLING:
DISCOVERING

The aptest Methods and Ways, exact Rules, properest Baits, and choicest Experiments for the catching all manner of fresh Water Fish. Together with a brief Discourse of Fish-ponds, and not only the easiest, but most Palatable Ways of dressing of all sorts of Fish, Whether belonging to Rivers, or Ponds; and the Laws concerning Angling, and the Preservation of such Fish.

The Third Edition,
Illustrated with Sculptures: And
very much Enlarged.

LONDON, Printed for William Battersby, and are to be Sold at his Shop at Thavies Inn Gate, near St. Andrews Church in Holbourn; and William Brown in Black Horse Alley. 1700.



THE PREFACE.

Courteous or Uncourteous Reader.

W

Hichsoever thou art I value not, knowing
that kind Words in a Preface are never
Charms a proof to anticipate Censure; &
Fate all Writers (especially on so inconsiderable a
Subject) cannot but expect; yet, if a Brother of
the Angle reads and trys, better Fortune may be
hoped for: As to others, the Book is not only ge-
nerally useless, but they indiscreet that Judg and
pass Sentence on what they understand not; Tra-
Etent Fabrilia Fabri. The common Objection, I
know, will be raised by the Ignorant; that is, What
needs any more Writing in this kind, since Mark-
ham, Walton, Venables, Cotton, and others,
have with so much Ingenuity bestowed no small
Pains herein? (to whose Labours and Industry I
acknowledg this Tract not a little beholding) Now
the old and trite Answer to this Objection must
needs be return'd, That a Pigmy mounted on the
Shoulders of a Giant may see further than its Sup-
porter; also all Arts are capable of Improvement,
none yet being arrived to an absolute Perfection; and
some affirm, that Angling, like Mathematicks, can

The Preface

never be so fully Learned, but that there will be still new Experiments left, for the tryal of others that succeed: Besides those Authors have discoursea something generally & slightly on Angling, whereas this (especially in this Third Edition) descends to the meanest particular any ways relating thereunto. I purposely forbear to speak any thing, as is usual, in praise of Angling, or of its Antiquity, or any ways Celebrate it, by telling you what holy, wise, and illustrious Persons have not only been Practisersthereof, in all Ages, but also spoken largely in its Commendation; neither shall I enumerate the manifold Advantages it has of other Recreations, especially by its easy Attainment, by the smallness of its Expence, Salubrity, and its creating a Calm and Sedate temper of Mind; that being an unworthy way of raising its Reputation by reflecting with detraction on other Sports: Neither could I ever observe that Harangues of that nature ever caused any person to be enamour'd thereon, unless there be a natural propensity in his own Genius thereunto; Anglers, like Poets, being born with an innate Affection to Angling, as Poets with a peculiar Inclination to Poetry; only this let me note, That none ever by their fondness of this Art consum'd Lordships or Lands, left and intended by provident Ancestors for a support to their Posterity; nor deplored any misfortune (if he kept him on dry Land) he receiv'd by pursuit of this Recreation, it no ways being accompanied with those Inconveniences which frequently attend others; nor is there herein the least natural tendency to Vice.

The Preface

As for this little Treatise, many persons have contributed much Oyl to its Lamp, else it would never have been able to afford so great a Light; and (without Vanity, I hope, I may say) there are very many things herein never yet published, and not vulgarly known; as also all that has been materially Printed concerning Angling, and that in so concise, regular, and brief manner deliver'd, as will not only render this the usefulest Book, but the most perfect of that kind: You'll find herein no vain or superfluous Diversions, far fetch'd, and incongruous Similitudes, more apt to inflame the Price than inform the Reader. Be pleased to remember, That many of the Rules herein are General, and admit of some Exceptions, yet the Angler may make from thence beneficial Deductions; which, if well and prudently consider'd, will discharge any Indictment of Falsity, the Fisher-man otherwise might be incited to prosecute against me: Besides, some things are proposed for him to Experiment, and not as infallible Truths. Also the Countries, Soils, Rivers, Seasons, Winds, and Qualities of the Year, are not alike, but differ almost in every place, (and the Spring is five or six Weeks forwarder in some than in other places) to whose great variety the defect or imperfection that appears in any rule ought to be ascribed, and certain allowances made according to Circumstances that intervene, especially in Artificial-Fly-Angling; yet if the Reader peruse this Book deliberately, and be but endued with consideration, and some Judgment, to be gained only by practise, the genuine Parent of Perfection; he'll not deny but that all things herein

The Preface

herein are sincerely Written, and, so as on his own frequent Essays he'll find True; and that the price of this Book is not totally cast away, since it will in the highest degree conduce to the perfect Knowledge of the exactest ways of the practical part of this Art, for which it's only design'd, and not to fill, or perplex the Angler's Head with Speculative, Fanciful, Idle, or Fabulous Notions of Fish, or Angling. And, though the Reader be no Angler, yet perhaps he may be Owner of Fish-ponds, or have a desire to have Fish well drest at his Table; and herein he'll be well furnished for both, with ample and true Instructions, not to be met with else where; most of the latter having received the Approbations of the best Palats, and practice of the Nobleſt Tables: And as a security to the former, the understanding the Laws made for the preservation of Fish, will not be unavailable. And, because the Pike is a mighty Tyrant in the liquid Element, I have added a Supplemental and particular Epitome of him, wherein is declared, not only the manner of his Life, Nature, and Vices, but a probable Method deseribed for his destruction, thereby to gain liberty to the other watery Inhabitants, whom he accounts only Created for the satisfaction of his voracious Humor, and, though the Pearch stands upon Property, and will not tamely submit, and part with his Life for the sake of Prerogative; yet if the Pike catch him by the Poll he makes him pay dearly for his resistance.

The Style is plain, and suited to the capacity of the meanest Fisherman, which I esteemed would best

The Preface

best become a Work of this Nature, which will not bear a Florid dress, or Rhetorical Phrases, Ornari
es ipsa negat, contenta doceri, neither indeed,
if I would, could I otherways have done, because
I cannot pretend to be the Master of any Eloquence.
The kind acceptance of the last, produces this
Third Edition, wherein every Chapter, nay almost
every Section is considerably augmented, besides the
addition of two new Chapters; and you'll find on
comparing them, many excellent things, and more
refined knacks added through the whole, gained by
Converse, with the most curious Observers, and
Practisers of this Art; which knacks may be ser-
viceable to some, though disapproved by others; most
Fishermen having some private Sentiments of their
own, which conceitedly they prefer before others, on
purpose to put a greater value on themselves, than
any real Merit, or Skill can be found in them:
From such Bully Fishers, this Book expects no other
Reception than Scorn and Contempt, their constant
Companions. And some ill Natured Anglers are
offended for opening their Cabinet, by divulging
their Secrets, like Flowers gathered and placed in
one Garland, and prostituted to the view of every
common Eye; how ridiculous their Opinions are
every one is able to Judge, since it is not Fine, Cu-
rious, and Skilful Angling, that destroys the breed
of Fish, or is thereunto injurious; but Otters, Wa-
ter-rats, Water-mice, Herons, Bitterns, Sea-
gulls, Kings-fishers, Cormorants, and the unlaw-
ful practice, and frequent use of Damming, Groping,
Spearing, Hanging, Twitchelling, Firing by Night,
and

The Preface

and Nets that depopulate the watery Element, more
in one Month than all the Years Angling. Now,
but that it's usual to follow the beaten Path, and
that the Printer perhaps would be put out of Hu-
mour, there had been no need of a Commendatory
Preface, to Court any into a good Opinion of it :
Possibly it's own Worth will abundantly justify it,
which on serious perusal, and careful Experiments,
it's hoped the Buyer will be both ready, and willing
to testify, for the vindication, as well as satisfaction
of the Author, who now Annexes his Name, not
out of the common Itch, or Ostentation, to be seen
in Print, but to evidence that he's not ashamed toown
the Work; which, although an Anonymous at first,
yet from Anglers found a generous Entertainment,
far beyond the Expectation of

Smedley near Manchester,
in Lancashire, Nov. 26.
1688.

Ja. Chetham.

A D V E R T I S E M E N T.

AT the Sign of the Fish in Black Horse Alley near Fleet-
Bridge, liveth Will. Browne, who maketh all sorts of
Fishing Rods, and Selleth all sorts of Fishing Tackle; also
Charles Kirby's Hooks, with Worms, Gentles, and Flyes; and
also the East India Weed, which is the only thing for Trout,
Carp, and Bottom Fishing, first being well soaked for hal-
an hour before you use it in Water, being of a brittle na-
ture, if not moistned before used, and then proves so strong
and fine, of a Water colour, that it deceives the Fish much
more than Hair or Silk. Note, That Kirby's Hooks are
known by the fineness of the Wyer and Strength; and many
Shops sells Counterfeit for his, which proves prejudicial to
the User, which the true Kirby's are to be Sold by Will.
Browne, and no where else.

T H E

THE
ANGLER'S
VADE MECUM, &c.

CHAP. I.

Of the Angle Rod, and its
Materials.

When, and what Materials to provide
for Angle Rods, &c.

§1. **G**AITHER the Materials to make
Angle Rods of, as the Hasle,
small Crab-tree, Black-thorn,
and Yew Switches, &c. at the
10th of December, or betwixt the last day of
November and Christmas day, that being the on-
ly time, because then they are freest from Sap,
B and

and are then the toughest: Get the Stocks, and Tops especially taper, or rush grown, streight, smooth, and free from Knots; the pieces of each Rod to suit each other in an exact Symmetry; otherwise they'll neither cast, nor strike well, nor ply truly. If they be not free from Knots, they'll be very apt to break at a Knot, and often frustrate the Expectation: Bind them in bundles, in the middle whereof put some streight Pole, to keep them from warping or crookning, and let them rest 15 months at least, before used.

Best Rod for Ground Line in muddy Waters, and for Float Angling.

§ 2. For the Ground Angle, especially in muddy Waters, the Cane or Reed Rod is best, which should be 3 yards and half of Cane, and a top of Hasle therein to put, consisting of one, two, or three pieces, and all of them together to be 2 yards, or 1 yard and half long, with the Whale-bone, at least; and at the top have 5 or 6 inches of Whale-bone, made round and taper, and whip'd with Shoe-maker's Wax, and Silk, neatly thereunto; so that your Rod will in all be 5 yards and half, or 5 yards long at least.

The stiffness of the Cane is helped by the length and strength of the top, the proportionable bending whereof chiefly preserves the Line. Having got an Hasle top, made of
your

your desired length, cut off 5 or 6 inches of the small end; then piece neatly, to the remaining part, a small piece of round, smooth, and taper Whale-bone, of 5 or 6 inches long, and whip it to the Hasle with good Silk, well rubbed with the best Shoemaker's Wax; all which will make the Rod to be long, taper, gentle, and not so apt to break: Let not the Whale-bone be above 6 inches long, at the most; and, at top thereof, whip a narrow, but strong, noose of Hair, with waxed Silk, to put your Line to.

§ 3 If your Hook fasten on Wood or Stones, in the Water, take out the top; and, instead thereof, put a Stick of a Hasle, which hath two Grains, or is forked; and follow the Line therewith, until you come to the Hook, (the Line running between the Grains or Forks) and it will loosen the Hook; then take out the Stick, and put in the top again.

*The best Rod for Fly, and running Line,
in clear Waters.*

§ 4. A Rod for Fly Angling, or running Line, in a clear Water, for Trout, Grayling, or Salmon Smelts (which are young Salmons about the bigness of a Fresh Herring) should be of several pieces of Hasles (as 5 or 6) and 6 inches of Whale-bone, all smooth, round, and taper: And the Hasles are to be taper, and proportionably fitted to each other; and

so neatly piec'd together, with fine Wax thread below, and Silk above, as to make it taper, and rush grown, like a Switch, and ply with a true bent to the Hand.

But the neatest Rod is thus made: Get a white Deal, or Fir-board, that's thick and free from Knots and Frets, and 7 or 8 foot long; let the Arrow-maker divide this with a Saw into several breadths; then, with his Planes, let him shoot them round, smooth, and rush grown, or taper-wise, and one of these will be 7 or 8 foot of the bottom of the Rod, all in one piece; then piece to it an Hasle of 6 or 7 foot long, proportion'd to the Fir, yet rush grown (the Hasle may consist of 2 or 3 pieces;) then to the Hasle piece a piece of Yew, about 2 foot long, made round, taper, and smooth, by the Arrow-maker; and to the Yew a piece of small, round and smooth Whale-bone 5 or 6 inches long; and this will be a curious Rod, if artificially work'd: Be sure that the Deal for bottom be strong and round. The Rod for Fly, and running Worm in a clear Water, must by no means be top heavy; but very well mounted, and exactly proportionable as well as slender and gentle at top; otherwise it will neither cast well, strike readily, nor ply and bend equally, which will very much indanger the Line; and let both the Hasle and Yew tops be free and clear from Knots, otherwise they'll be often in danger to break. For the same reason, let all the Hasle Rods

Rods be free from Knots, and no weightier than you can easily manage with one Hand.

Now the whiteness of the Deal, or Fir, will scare away Fish; but you must colour the Fir in this following manner, viz. warm the Fir bottom at the Fire, when finished by the Arrow-maker; then, with a Feather dipt in *Aqua Fortis*, stroke the Deal, or Fir bottom, and with your Hand, chafe it into the Fir, and it will make it a pure Cinnamon colour.

Roch, &c. Rod.

§ 5. Rods for Roch, Dace, Tench, Chub, Bream, and Carp, &c. should not have the top so gentle as one for Fly; therefore make their tops pretty stiff, that so the Rod may exactly answer the motion of the Hand: For Roch and Dace only nibble, and if you strike not in that very moment, especially if you fish with Paste, or any very tender Bait, you miss them; because a slender top folds and bends a little with a sudden Jerk.

§ 6. In Droughts, steep your Rod in Water, a little before you begin to Angle.

§ 7. At top of your Rod or Fin fix, with Shoomaker's Wax and Silk, a noose or loop of Hair, not large but strong, and very straight, to fix your Line to.

The Rods length.

§ 8. Generally length of Rod is to be governed by the breadth of the River you Angle in; but always use a Rod full as long as the River will bear, and let the same be very well mounted, and not in the least top-heavy: Although I angle in a small River generally, yet I constantly use a Rod 5 yards and a half long; and experimentally find more advantages by it than I need to trouble you with here, by recounting them.

Running Line top.

§ 9. Your top for running Line must be gentle, that the Fish may more easily, and (to himself) insensibly run away with the Bait, and not be scared with the stiffness of the Rod: If you make your top of Yew and Whalebone, as before is directed, it will much conduce to this purpose; the Yew, though much bended, will quickly return to its former standing.

To preserve Rods.

§ 10. To preserve Hasles, whether stocks or tops, from Worm-eating or rotting, twice or thrice in a year, as you think fit, rub them all over with Sallet Oyl, Tallow, or sweet Butter, which was never salted; and, with much

much rubbing, chafe the same into them; and keep your Rod dry, lest it rot, and not too near the Fire, lest it grow brittle; and in the Spring, before you begin to Angle, steep them 12 hours in Water.

C H A P. II.

Of Hairs and Lines.

What Hair to elect for Lines.

§ 1. **E**lect your Hair not from lean, poor, or diseased Jades, but from a Stone-Horse, or Gelding at least, that is fat, strong, and lusty, and of 4 or 5 years old, and that which groweth from the inmost and middle part of his Dock, and so extendeth it self downwards to the Ground, is commonly the biggest and strongest Hair about the Horse, and better than those upon the upper part of, or setting on of the Tail: Generally best Horses have the best Hair.

Colour of Hair for Lines.

§ 2. Hair of a Sorrel, Chesnut, or Brown colour is best for ground Angle, especially in muddy Waters, they being not only the colour of the Gravel or Sand, but of the Water

B 4 also;

also; the white, and grey, or dusky white Hair, for clear Rivers and Waters. Your Hair thus suited is not discernable by the Fish, and consequently will not scare them from your Bait, if your Lines be but of a just and due thickness.

Some use the pale watery Green, but not a deep Green, for weedy Rivers in Summer. A Black may do well for Rivers that immediately flow from Mosses, and are thereby very Black: But, in my own Practice, I always contemn'd both the Green and Black colour'd Lines.

§ 3. Some (although I never do) dye their Hair of what colour they please; which, for a Brown, is thus done, *viz.* Boil Walnut Leaves in Chamber-lye, or, instead thereof, Water and some Allum in it, and, when cold, steep the Hair therein; and some add a few Marigold Leaves to the Walnut Leaves and Chamber-lye, which is needless.

Some say, that the inner Bark of a Crab-tree boil'd in Water with some Allum, makes a pure Yellow colour; which is only (if at any time) good when Weeds rot, and thereby the Line looks like to the Weeds.

§ 4. If you'll have a pale water Green, take a Pint of strong Ale, half a Pound of Soot, a little quantity of Juice of Walnut Leaves, an equal quantity of Allum; put all together in a Pot, Pan, or Pipkin, boil them half an hour; being cold, put the Hair into it, and it will make

make the Hair of a Glass, or pale Green colour, the longer it lies, the deeper is the colour: But if you'll have it rather a deeper Green, take a Pottle of Allum Water, a large handful of Marigold Leaves, Boil them till a yellow Scum arise; then take half a Pound of green Copperas, as much Verdigrise, beat them into fine Powder, put those into the Allum Water, set all to cool; then put in the Hair, and let it remain till it's deep enough coloured, about 12 hours; then take it out, and lay it to dry. Note, that the longer you permit Hair to be in it, it will be deeper coloured: Some put in the Hair whilst the Liquor is hot, but, I doubt, that weakens the Hair; and indeed so, I think, does any dying or colouring of Hair.

How to order, chuse, and keep Hair.

§ 5. When you get any good Hair, immediately steep it 12 hours in cold Spring Water; then wash and rinse it very well from Dritt, without straining any Hairs; then hang it up to dry 3 or 4 days in a Kitchin, but not too near the Fire; when perfectly dry, put it in a Bag or Case made of Parchment or Paper; which lay in a Box or Desk, plac'd in an upper Room.

How to make Lines.

§ 6. When you make Lines, especially 4 or 5 of the lowermost Links, Lengths, Gildards, or Toughts, (for they are stiled by all these Names in different Places and Countries) let them be of the best Hairs, and chuse out of the Hair such as are of equal bigness, even, round, clear, and free from Galls, Scabs and Frets; for such a Hair will prove as strong as 3 uneven, scabby Hairs, that are ill chosen, and full of galls or unevenness; for such commonly stretch altogether, or break altogether, which Hairs of an unequal bigness never do, but break singly, and betray the Angler that relies on them: Therefore when you get good Hair, be choice and sparing of it; and you may make the top of your Line, and indeed all the Line, except 2 yards next the Hook, of a courser Hair. Always let the top of your Line, whether in muddy or clear Waters, be made of white Hair; because the Fishes Bites and Line, will be far more discernable, than if it were either of black or brown Hair.

§ 7. Never stretch or strain Hairs before they be made into a Line, (as some do) for then they will shrink when used; the strongest and best are easily elected by the Eye.

§ 8. To make the Line handsom, and to twist the Hair even and neat, gives it strength; for if one Hair be long, and another short, the short

short one receives no strength from the long one, and so breaketh; and then the other, as too weak, breaketh also: Therefore twist them slowly, and, in twisting, keep them from entangling together, which hinders their right pleighting or bedding together; and twist the Hairs neither too hard nor too slack, but even, so as they may twine, and couch close one within another, and no more; without either snarling or gaping one from another. Your Links may be tyed to each other with a Fisher's knot, or, as some call it, a Water-knot, which any Angler will teach you to make. The mixing Hair and Silk I esteem no ways good for Lines; but if your Lines must be very strong, make them all of Hair, or all of Silk, that is white; because it's strongest, and will not rot so quickly as colour'd Silk.

§ 9. When you have twisted your Links, lay them in cold Water for one hour, then twist them over again before you tye them into a Line; otherwise a Hair or two will shrink, and be shorter than the rest, at first Fishing with it, and is so much of the strength of the Line lost, for want of first watering, and then re-twisting it.

§ 10. Do not arm, fix, or whip Hooks to any Line, either for Ground or Fly Angling, that consists of more than three or four Links, at the most: but if the Hair be long, and the lowermost Link consists of three Hairs, then you may whip to one that consists of two Links only:

only : The top of the uppermost Link having a small loop, or water noose, you may to any Line put the same, and as easily remove it ; there being another loop, or water noose, at the bottom of your Line.

The length of a Dub-fly Line.

§ 11. Your Line for Dub-fly, Cast-fly, or Artificial fly (which are all one and the same) should be about 3 yards longer than the Rod, or almost twice the length of the Rod, if the River be not encumbered with Wood or Trees on its Banks ; if so, let it be shorter, but longer than the Rod, and let the Hair be a white or darkish white Colour.

The thickness of Cast-fly Lines.

§ 12. To Angle for Trout, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts (no bigger than a very large Herring) with the Dub-fly ; let the two first Links next the Hook be but of one Hair apiece, but the Hair must be strong, and of the thicker ends only, and chosen for the purpose ; the next two Links of two Hairs, and next to that must consist of three Hairs ; at the top whereof have a Water noose, or loop, to put your Line to ; whose lowermost Link consists of three Hairs, and has another Water noose at bottom, to fix your Fly of three or four Links to ; then let two of the next Links of
your

your Line be four Hairs, and so proceed, by increasing one Hair until you come to six, or seven Hairs, at the top; let the single Hairs, and three or four next Links, be of a white, or darkish white colour.

§ 13. But many think this too small, especially where there are very large Trout, and therefore for Cast-fly Angling constantly advise two of the first Links next the Hook to be of two Hairs apiece, the next above them of three Hairs, to which have a water noose; then two or three Hairs apiece, and then proceed with four, five, six, and seven, to the topmost Link.

§ 14. Others there are, and good Anglers too, that advise the two Links next the Hook to consist of three Hairs apiece; then one Link of four, at top whereof to have a water, noose; then four, five, six, and seven, to the topmost Link; which I like very well, if the River abound with large Trout, and the Water either be clearing after Rain, or be very full, or swelled more than usually.

Now, since you have all directed, make choice according to your skill, practice, and dexterity: Most, when they Angle with three Hairs next the Hook, make a water noose on the top of the second Link, especially if the Hair be long.

You may much advantage your self in casting your Lines, especially the Artificial Fly-Line, by making the uppermost Link or Gildard

dard to consist of twelve or nine Hairs, and one or two Hairs less in the next Link, and so abate proportionably in every Link, until you come to the Hook; by this means any Tyro Angler will cast a Fly well, and quickly become an accurate Artist; and if you chance to fasten your Hook, and cannot come to loosen it, you'll not lose above one Gildard, or two at most, though you pull to break it: Because the Line is so strong at the upper end, and you may Angle with stronger Lines at the Cast-fly than at Ground, in a clear Water, for the Trout. For a clear Water at Ground for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, never use a Line made otherwise than is before directed, at Sect. 12. of this Chapter; only have not above four Hairs in any one Link of the Line.

Your Lines thus made, will cause the Rod and Line to be in a manner taper, from the very Hand to the Hook, and the Line to fall much better and straighter, and cast your Fly or Bait to any certain Place your Hand and Eye shall direct, with less weight and violence, that would otherwise circle the Water, and fright away Fish.

Length and thickness of a Line for running Worm, in a clear Water.

§ 15. Anglers differ in opinion about the length of running Worm Line in a clear Water,

ter, for Trout, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts; some would have it longer than Rod, others length of Rod, and a third sort 2 yards shorter than Rod, which I, by my own Experience, best approve of; although each of these lengths of Line may in some Rivers and Seasons be more proper than other; as the Line longer than Rod, when the Water is exceeding bright and low, is best; for thickness, let the 2 or 3 lowermost Links or Lengths be of one Hair apiece, and then proceed as is before directed for Cast-fly Line, at Sect. 12. of this Chapter: But let no part of this Line be above 4 Hairs in thickness, in any one Link. Let the Hair be of a white colour, or rather a dusky white colour, not perfectly white.

Length and thickness of running Line for muddy Water.

§ 16. Let the Line for running Worm in muddy Water, the 3 lowermost Links at least, be of Chesnut, Brown, or Sorrel colour, and from Hook upwards, the thickness of the Line before directed, at the 14. Sect. of this Chapter, and but half length of Rod.

The Float or Cork Lines length and thickness.

§ 17. The Line for Float Angle should be made as that directed at the 14. Sect. of this Chapter for thickness; but should be as long, or

or rather longer than the Rod for Rivers, but shorter than the Rod for Ponds, Pits, Mears, and standing Waters, and the colour of three or four lowermost Links, according to the colour of the Water; that is, a Chestnut, Sorrel, or Brown colour, for a muddy Water; but a dark White or Grey for clear Rivers and Waters.

The Dibbing Line.

§ 18. The Dibbing Line should be of the same length and thickness of a Line for running Worm, in a muddy Water; or it may be a Hair or two thicker, because little of the Line comes into the Water: And in this way of Angling you may expect the biggest Fish; and wanting length to give him Line, after he is struck, you must be forc'd to tug for't; yet sometimes this Line may be as long as Rod, or near it, if a gentle Wind blow from the Bank you stand on.

§ 19. I have often for the ground Angle made my Links of 3 Hairs, to consist of 2 Hairs of a Sorrel, Brown, or Chestnut colour, and 1 of White, sometimes 2 White Hairs and 1 Hair of Chestnut, Sorrel, or Brown colour'd Hair, and do like it very well.

§ 20. At the bottom of every Line have a small water noose, or loop, that you may hang a Hook of any size, whip'd to a Line, consisting of two or three Links; or change your Hook,

Hook, and two or three lowermost Links, as you please. If it be a Line of one Hair next Hook, let the noose be at a Link of three Hairs; if a Line of three Hairs next Hook, let the water noose be at a Link consisting of four Hairs.

I have been the more precise in describing the Lines, because many Anglers understand them not, and, to their no small prejudice, are very careless therein: For good and neat Tackle much conduces to his Sport, especially in Angling for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, in clear Rivers.

The trowling Line.

§ 21. Let the trowling Line be made of four or six fold of Hemp Yarn, finely Spun of the best Hemp, and let the folds be neatly twisted together; its length should be 20 or 30 yards long, and have also 3 yards next the Hook of strong white Silk neatly made. Some use green or sky coloured Silk, and some make the trowling Line all of Silk, either green or sky colour'd.

Barbel and Chub Line.

§ 22. The Barbel and Chub Lines must be very strong, seven Hairs at least next Hook, and twelve at top of the Line; some use a Line of Silk that is white, because white Silk is al-

C ways

ways strongest, and not so apt to rot as others ;
and some use green or sky colour'd Silk.

C H A P. III.

*Of Hooks, Floats, Leading Lines,
Plumbs, and the rest of the
Angler's Tackle.*

THE best Hooks are made by one Mr. Den-ton that lives about Yeland in Yorkshire, and by John Perkin, and William Perkin, that live in Sadleworth in Yorkshire ; which three Persons are very excellent Trout Anglers.

Hooks.

§ 1. The Wyer of the Hooks should be small, and such as will not stretch ; the Points so well temper'd, that they'll not become dull with Fishing, but still preserve their keenness ; all which Denion's Hooks will perform.

The London Hooks are of too thick a Wyer, and of too open, and ill contriv'd compass ; which, although they may serve or suit for a River abounding with Weeds, by reason of the wideness of their compass or bent, being something more easily to be loosed when entangled with Weeds, which is all they are good

good for ; nevertheless I totally reject them in Fishing with Dub-fly, or in stony Rivers, by reason they will become speedily dull ; and for that a Fish will quickly get off the Hook, by reason of their open bent.

§ 2. Let the Hooks be long in the shank, and of a compass somewhat inclining to roundness, but the point must stand even and straight, and the bending must be in the shank ; for if the shank be straight, the point will hang outward, though when set on it stand right, yet it will, after the taking of a few Fish, cause the Hair at the end of the shank to stand bent, and consequently the point of the Hook to hang directly upwards.

§ 3. Whether you Angle at top or bottom, proportion your Hooks for strength and compass to the number of the Hairs you Angle with next Hook ; and use not a small Hook to great Baits, nor a great Hook to small Baits, Barbels and Chubs must have large Hooks, but Pearches, Carps, Tenches, Breams, and Eels, Hooks of a far less size, not too large. Trout in clear Waters, and Graylings, Salmon Smelts, Roches, Dates, Ruffs, and Gudgeons, must be Angled for with small Hooks : And although many use great Hooks for Trout, in muddy Waters especially, yet it's not so sure a way as to Angle with small ones, and experience will convince you of the inconvenience of great Hooks ; but the great Salmon must have a large and strong Hook.

Whipping Hooks.

§ 4. When you set on the Hook (which is stil'd arming, fixing, or whipping Hooks) do it with small but strong Silk, well rubbed with Shoomakers VVax, and lay your Hair on the inside of the Hook; for, if on the outside, the Silk will cut and fret it asunder, and it is not so apt to strike Fish: And to avoid the fretting of the Hair, by the Hook on the inside, smooth all the Hook on a Whet-stone, from the inside to the back of the Hook slope-ways, and from a Straws breadth, below the top of the Hook, wrap the Silk about the bare Hook, until you come to the top of the shank; then lay your Line on the inside, and whip with your Silk downwards, until you arrive almost at the bent of the Hook, and then cut off the end of the Gildard, and fasten.

Whip your Hooks for Angling with Worms, with red colour'd Silk; but for Paste, Cod-bait, and other whitish Baits, with white colour'd Silk, and some do it with a white or red colour'd Hair, and some with Flax or Hemp: But strong and small Silk I like best.

How to arm a bristled Hook you will see hereafter, when we discourse of Cod-baits.

Proportion of Hooks.

Hooks for Dub-fly generally should be small, so for Cod-bait, but larger for Worms; yet I like not Angling at Worm, especially in a clear Water, with so large a Hook as some do.

Of Floats.

§ 5. Floats should evermore be of Cork for Rivers; but Quills and Pens are best for Pits, Ponds, Mears, and Standing Waters, (being not able to bear the strong Streams in Rivers) and Angling near top in very slow Rivers, and especially with Pastes or tender Baits.

§ 6. Obtain the best Cork you can without flaws, or holes, bore the Cork through with a small hot Iron, then put into it a Quill of a fit Proportion, neither too large to split it, or so small to slip out, but as it may stick in very closely; then pare (either with a sharp Pen-knife or Raso) the Cork into the form of a Pyramid, small Pear, Egg, or Nutmeg, and into what bigness you please; then upon a small Grind-stone, or with a Pumice-stone, make it compleat; for you cannot pare it so smooth as you may grind it, and have Corks of all sizes.

§ 7. After you have shaped your Cork, bore with a small hot Iron a hole from end to end,

G 3 through

through the midst thereof, into that hole thrust a Quill, and cut the Quill off even with the Cork at each end, and through the Quill draw the Line, and fasten them both together with a Wedg of the uppermost hard end of the Goose Quill, the Feather being stript off; let the Wedg be 2 inches long, and white, which will be best discernable; then place the smaller end of the Cork towards the Hook, and the bigger towards the Rod, that the smaller end sinking down with the Hook, the bigger may float aloft, and bear the Wedg directly erect; which, when pull'd under the surface of the Water, is the certain signal of the Fishes biting, unless by accident the Hook or Line become entangled, or stayed by some Stone, piece of Wood, or Weeds.

§ 8. Cork, in form of a Nutmeg or Egg, being biggest in the midst, and small at each end, is a little apter to sink, and will not carry so weighty a plumb of Lead; yet on clear bottoms, and Angling with Bait some distance from Ground, and in slow running Rivers, it will do very well, and better than others.

§ 9. Furnish your self with Corks and Quills of all sizes, and let the Cork be so poized with Lead, on the Line, that the Quill which is in it, being about 2 inches long, will swim upright; and so justly and equally balanced with Lead, that the least bite or nibble will sink the Cork.

Leading Lines.

§ 10. For Leading Lines, I account the small round Pellet or Lead shot best, especially for stony Rivers and running Line, let it be cloven, and neatly closed about your Line, and let not above two plumbs be on the Line at once, an inch and a half, or 2 inches distant from each other, and the lowermost plumb about 7 or 8 inches distant from the Hook, for a running Line, either in a clear or muddy VVater, but 9 or 10 inches of Hook for a float Line: But if the River run on a Sandy bottom, and be full of VWood, with few Stones, Plumbs, or Lead, in Shape of a Diamond, or of a Barley Corn, or of an Oval form, is best, the ends being smooth and close laid down, either for a muddy Water or float Angling. Many, when they Angle amongst Weeds, place their Lead on the shank of the Hook, and conceive it not so apt to entangle on them.

§ 11. VVhen you Angle with the running Line, let the Line have as much Lead as will fit the Stream and River in which you Angle, and no more; *viz.* more in a great troublesome and rough VVater and Stream than in a smaller that is calmer and quieter, as near as may be, so much as will sink the Bait to the bottom, and will permit the same to be kept in motion, by continually rowling on the Ground, and no more. This Rule is to be observed in

float Angling in Rivers. Some cover their Lead on their Lines with Shoomaker's Wax as thin as may be.

§ 12. As the day increases, your Pellet or Plumb of Lead may be lesser; for that will carry readily at five a Clock in the morning at running Line, which will sink and fasten the Line at nine a Clock: For in Droughts Rivers generally abate, as heat increases.

When you Angle in a very stony River that's clear, with the running Line, the Stones are apt to rub the small Pellet or Lead bright, and that scares away the Fish; therefore, when it does so, remove the bright Lead, and put on other Lead that is black.

Lead Plummet.

§ 13. In a Pistol Bullet, make a hole through it, and put therein a strong Thread twisted; and, when occasion is, hang this on the Hook, to try the depth of the River or Pond, especially when you Angle with the Float, and the Bait is to be near the bottom, or but just touch it.

Whetstone.

§ 14. Procure a little Whetstone about two inches long, one quarter of an inch square, which is far better, to whet or sharpen Hooks on, than a File, though never so fine or good; for it either will not touch a well-temper'd Hook, or leave it rough, but not sharp: And

we always, to avoid the fretting of the Hair by the Hook, smooth all the Hook on a Whet-stone, from the inside to the back of the Hook slope-ways.

Line Cases.

§ 15. Get a Case made of red Leather, like a Comb Case, with 12 or 14 partitions therein, made of the finest thin Parchment, with a flap to cover over the edges to prevent losing any thing out of them; in the several partitions keep Hooks ready whipt to Lines of two or three Gildards in length, and ready leaded likewise, spare Links, Lines of all lengths or sorts, Silk of all sorts and colours, hair, and single strong Hairs, Hooks. These Cases contain much, and lye in a small room in the Pocket; in one of these Cases you may put all your tackle ready fixt for the running Line in a muddy and clear VVater; in another, all the tackle for the ground Angling with Float; in another (which must be large) the Angling tackle for great Fish, as Chub, Barbel, great Salmon; in another, your Angling tackle for Pike, which must likewise be very large: So that when you travel from home, you may Angle any where for most sorts of Fish at ground, if you carry but a good Rod with you made of Hasle, and the pieces put into each other, and it will serve for a walking Staff; such as these you may buy ready made in London, and other places.

How

How to keep Cod-baits, &c.

§ 16. Make Bags of Linnen and Woollen to keep and carry all sorts of Baits in; also a piece of Cane, with holes bor'd therein, to keep Caterpillars, Palmers, Wolbeds, natural Flies, Bobs, or any sort of Insects; a Horn for Gentles; Boxes of diverse sizes to carry Hooks, Silk, Lead, Thread, Corks, Floats of Quills, Shoomaker's Wax, and Dub-flies in; also have a neat and sharp Pen-knife. The following way is esteemed a secret, and the best way to carry and keep Cod-baits, Caterpillars, Clap-baits, natural Flies, and Oak-worm in, for to give Cod-baits Water is soon to rot them, because they are as well kept in a piece of withy Bark, that some of them will live therein to be turn'd to Flies: 'Tis thus, cut a round Bough of fine green bark'd Withy, about the thickness of half ones Arm, and taking the Bark clear off, about a foot in length, turn both ends together from the middle, and let them infold within each other, and then tye it with a String on the top, and stop it with a Cork or piece of Stick; in this put the aforesaid Baits, and every Night lay it in the Grafs, and use it next Day, or let it lie until you have occasion for them: The Dew preserves them, and makes them scour and thrive. Thus you may keep Cod-baits, Grasshoppers, &c. for the moisture of the Bark contri-

contributes much to their preservation, yet it's convenient to bore small holes in it for their better perspiration, although the bark be very porous.

The Landing Net and Hook.

§ 17. Have a small long Pole made with a Loop at the end, like a Water-noose, to which fasten a small Net to Land great Fish, without which you'll be in danger to lose them: But if you Angle for Pike, Barbel, Chevin, or great Salmons, get a large Hook, call'd a landing Hook, with a Screw at the end to screw into a Socket, fixed at the end of a long Pole, to strike into the mouth or any part of the Fish, to draw them to Land.

You may also fit to the same Socket and Pole two other Hooks, one sharp to cut Weeds away, the other to pull out Wood.

The Panier.

§ 18. Let the Panier be light, made of peel'd willow Twigs, neatly work'd up.

*Materials for the Angler to carry.
with him.*

§ 19. Carry with you all sorts of Hooks, Lines, Links ready twisted, Hair, Silk of diverse colours, small but strong Thread, Leads, Plumrets,

Plummets, Floats of all sorts and sizes, Shoemaker's Wax, Pen-knife, Whet-stone, Line-cases, Worm-bags, Hooks, Boxes, Hooks ready fixt to Lines of two or three Links or Gildards in length, Baits, Flies, Dubbing-bag, Worm-bags, Horn for Gentles, a neat and sharp pair of Scissars, and Rod.

C H A P. IV.

Of Baits.

§ 1. Having instructed our Angler with what Tackle to be accoutré, the next Discourse directs him how to find, order, manage, keep and preserve all sorts of natural Baits, which generally are Insects, or Creatures bred of Putrefaction, and are a small, fleshless and bloodless Vermin, divided (in some sort) between the Head, Body and Belly, as an Ant, Fly, Bee, &c. under which the Earth-worm, Caterpillar, &c. are also comprehended. First, he's to observe that Earth-worms are a general Bait for all sorts of Fish whatsoever, and that they and Gentles continue in Season the whole Year; the Earth-bob from *Martinmas* until almost *May Day*; and the Cow-turd-bob from *May Day* until *Michaelmas*; Flies, Palmers, or Wooll-beds,

beds, Caterpillars, Cod-baits, and Worms, bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, as the Oak-worm, &c. all Summer. And know, that that when one sort of Bait comes in season the preceding are not useleſs; and whenoever you Angle at ground, in clear Water, have both Earth-worms, Cod-bait, Gentles, and Bobs in readines with you, and in more likeli-hood ſucces will attend your Labours: But if you go to Angle for Troutſ in a muddy Water, with running Line, you need only take Brandlings, Gilt-tails, Tag-tails, and Meadow-worms with you; if the three laſt are not to be eaſily got, then Brandlings only: And you may have ſome ſcoured in Moſs and Water only, others, as is directed, with Riddle, and others with grave Earth: For ſometimes they'll take the Worm kept one way, and ſometimes the other, and that all on the ſame Day, and in two hours ſpace.

Of Worms there are diuerſe ſorts; ſome bred in the Earth, and therefore call'd Earth-worms, or Worms ſimply, without any addition; ſuch are the Dew-worm, Red-worm, Brandling, Gilt-tail, Tag-tail, and Meadow-worm: Others are bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, as Palmers or VVooll-beds, Caterpillars, Oak-worm, and Cabbage or Colewort-worm; others on Excrements or ſome dead Flesh, as Gentles, VVaſps, &c. of all which this Chapter treats.

*Dew-worm, Garden-worm, Lob-worm,
or Twatchel,*

§ 2. Are but one Worm, although called in different Places by all the said Names, and it's the principal Worm for Salmons, Chevins, Trout, Barbels, and Eels that are of the greatest size; but for smaller Fish, though of the same Species, it's not so proper. Of these, some be called Squirrel-tails, which have a red Head, a streak down the Back, and a broad Tail; and these are esteemed the best, because they are toughest, most lively, and live longest in the Water: For with a dead Worm you are in all probability to catch little or nothing. This Worm is found in a Garden or Church-Yard, late in a Summers Evening, with a Lanthorn; or in great Droughts pound Walaut Leaves, and put the Juice thereof, mixt with a little Water, into their holes, and it drives them out of the Ground.

Brandling, Gilt tails, and Red-worms,

§ 3. Are the principal Worms for all sorts of Fish, and are generally to be found in old Dunghills, or some very rotten Earth or Place near to them, but usually in Cow-dung or Hogs-dung rather than Horse dung, which is somewhat too hot and dry for them; but the

the best are to be found in Tanners Bark, which they cast up in heaps after they have used it about their Leather. These, especially the two first, are the prime Worms Anglers use for Trouts, Graylings, Salmon Smelts, Gudgeon, Pearch, Tench and Bream; these three last take the Red-worm well scoured, very well: The Brandlings and Gilt-tails are taken by Trouts and Grayling, both in muddy and clear Waters, but the Red-worm best in muddy Waters. Some say, the Brandling is the best Worm for a Trout, others the Gilt-tail; but if you Angle with two Worms on the Hook at once, as is generally used for Trouts in muddy Waters, then put both a Brandling and Gilt-tail on the Hook at once, the Gilt-tail the latter.

Marsh or Meadow:worms,

§ 4. Are got out of Marsh ground, or the fertile Banks of Rivers, and is a little bleuish, and should be well scoured, and then it's both tough and sprightly. 'Tis a choise Worm in *March, April and September*, for Trouts, Salmon Smelts, Gudgeon, Grayling, Flounder, Breams and Pearch; and some will constantly use this Worm from *Candlemas* until *Michaelmas*, and prefer it before either Brandling or Gilt-tail; and it requires more time to be well scoured in than either Brandling or Gilt-tail, ~~and~~ ^{it} should be kept in Moss

Moss and Water, fifteen days at least, before used.

Tag-tail.

§ 5. Is a Worm of the colour of a Man's Hand, or a pale Flesh colour, with a yellow Tag on his Tail, almost half an inch long: They are found in Marled Lands or Meadows, after a shower of Rain, or in a morning, in Weather that is calm and not cold, in *March* and *April*. It's a very good Worm for Trout; and there are Anglers that affirm, that there is not a better Bait in the World for a Trout, if you Angle with them whilst the Water is discoloured by Rain; some commend it likewise for a Grayling: This Worm will not endure long scouring.

§ 6. Note, that the Dew-worm, Red-worm, and Meadow-worm will abide more scouring than any of the before-mentioned Worms, and are better for long keeping.

How to order, keep, and scour Worms.

§ 7. Put your Worms into very good long Moss, whether white, red, or green, is not much material, but the soft white Moss that grows on some Heath is best; (but it's difficult to be found in some Places and Countrys) wash it well, and cleanse it from all Earth and Filth, wring it very dry, then put your

your Moss and Worms into an earthen Pot, cover it close, that they crawl not out ; set it in a cool place in Summer, and in Winter in a warm place, that the Frost kill them not ; every fourth day in Summer change the Moss, once a week in the Winter, or, at least, let the Moss be taken from them, and clean washed in fresh Spring Water, and squeezed betwixt your Hands till it be pretty dry, and then put it to them again : The longer you keep them, especially the Lob-worm, Marsh-worm and Red worm, before you use them, the better ; some mingle Camomil or Fennel with the Moss. Clean scouring Worms makes them redder, clearer, tougher, sprightlier, live long on the Hook, and keep colour, and consequently more desirable by Fish. If you be in haste, a little Bole-armoniack put to them will farther your Desire, and make them scour in a short time : Or you may put the Dew-worm, Red-worm, 3 or 4 hours in Water, and they will scour themselves, but be very weak, yet a few hours in good Moss will recover them ; then observe when the Knot near the middle of the Brandling begins to swell, he's Sick, and, if not well look'd to, is near Death ; but, least they Die, you may feed them with Crumbs of Bread and Milk, or fine Flower and Milk, or the Yolk of an Egg and sweet Cream coagulated over the Fire, give them a little and often.

D

Or,

Or, if you be in haste, put your Brandlings, Gilt-tails, &c. into Moss that's exceeding wet, and it will quickly scour them, but not keep them long; but when you go to Angle, remove them into Moss, out of which the Water is very well wrung or squeezed.

Some wet their Moss very well in sweet Milk, or, which is far better, Ale-wort, (in which there has been no Hops) and then squeeze it pretty well, and over-night put the Worms therein they intend to use the next day, and think Fish like them better; but the Worms must not rest long in the Moss thus wet in Milk or Ale-wort, in regard it will much swell them, and in 24 hours spoil them; but if you put them in fresh Moss and Water, when you have finished your days Angling, it will well revive and recover them.

Others, and expert Anglers, keep them in Moss, and good store of Earth cast out of a Grave; the less time the Party hath been Buried the better, and put them in fresh Moss, and some of this Earth, when they go to Angle, and those that use this much, boast of its Excellency in alluring Fish. I know some ingenious Anglers that in the Spring, and for a muddy Water, use to shave Riddle or red Oker (with which People in Lancashire use to mark their Sheep) into the Moss they keep their Worms in, and sometimes those Baits will be taken eagerly, when the brighter (that is, those kept in Moss and Water only)

will

will not at all be taken, and perhaps within an Hour again the bright ones will be taken, and the radled Worms refused. Now since all ways are discovered to you for keeping and ordering your Worms, elect that way which Experience assures you to be the best ; only this let me observe, That if I could otherwise help it, I would never have my Brandlings or Gilt-tails kept in Moss, and the Water well squeezed out of it, (which way I only use) less than 48 hours, or above 10 days ; but I often Angle with them when they are not scoured 18 hours, but 'tis not so good.

*Palmer-worm, Palmer-fly, Wooll-bed,
and Cankers.*

§ 8. Are all one Worm, bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and is, if not a perfect Catterpillar, yet a Species thereof, these are rough and woolly on the outward parts, hence by some called Wooll-beds, and are good Baits either for Trout, Chub, Grayling, Roch, or Dace ; Palmer-fly and May-fly are the very Ground or Foundation of all Fly Angling.

Catterpillars, Oak-worm, Cabbage-worm,
Colewort-worm or Grub, Crabtree-worm
or Jack

Are Worms bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, and may be kept with the Leaves of those Trees, Herbs or Plants on which they are bred, by renewing the Leaves often in a day, and putting in fresh instead of the old ones : The Boxes they are kept in should have a few small holes bored therein, to let in Air, but you may keep them best, as is already directed Cap. 3. Sect. 16. in Withy Bark.

These are good Baits for Chub, Roch, Dace and Trout, &c. and Fish bite much better at the Oak-worm, or any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, if you Angle with the same when they shew themselves on the top of the Water, (as with the natural Fly) than if you use it under ; for when a gale of Wind shaketh the Trees, the Worms fall into the Water, and presently rise and float on the top, where Fish rise at them as at Flies; and indeed they sink not till toss'd and beaten by the Waves or Stream, and so they Die and lose their native colour, and then the Fish (as you may perceive by those on your Hook) value them not ; although these sort of Baits are taken by Roch, Dace and Chub, well at the top of the Water, yet you may Angle

18 Inches or lower within the Water, and they do very well ; or you may put one on the point of a Dub fly Hook, and dib with it, or dib with the Ash-fly and one of these on the point of the Hook for Trout. The Oak-worm is a very good Bait, and of a fine green colour, and in Ponds is a Murtherer of Roch and Dace.

To get these Baits, beat on an Oak, Crab-tree, or Haw-thorn, that grows over an Highway or bare Place, and they'll fall for you to gather ; or go to Cabbages or Coleworts, &c. and there seek for them.

Some think the Palmer-worm, Catterpillar, &c. are bred from a Dew left on the Leaves of Trees, Herbs, Plants or Flowers, Coleworts or Cabbages, which being condensed by the Suns generative heat, do in 3 days become living Creatures, of several shapes and colours, some being hard and tough, some smooth and soft, some are horned in their Head, some in their Tail, and some have none ; some have Hair on them, some none ; and some of them are said to be bred on the Eggs or Spawn of the Catterpillar, and in time turn to be Butter-flies ; and generally all Flies, being bred of Putrefaction, receive Life, or Vivify, as the Suns heat farthers or disposes the seminal Virtue, by which they are bred, unto Animation.

Bobs

§ 9. Are of two sorts, the one found or bred in mellow, resty, heathy, sandy, light Soils, and gathered after the Plow when the Land is first broke up from Grazing, (and is call'd the Earth-bob, White-grub, or White-bait) and is a Worm as big as two Maggots, hath a red Head, and is all soft, and full of whitish Guts; you may easily know in what Grounds most are, for there the Crows will be watching, and follow the Plow very close; or you your self may dig one Spade Graft deep in sandy, heathy Ground, that has lain long rest from the Plow, and find sufficient of them.

These are a choice Bait from the first of November until after mid April for Chub, Roch, Dace, Salmon, Smelts, Trout, Bream, Tench and Carp.

When you gather these, put them into a Pot or Firkin, with sufficient of the Soil they were bred in, to preserve them, then stop the Vessel exceeding close, or all will spoil; set them where neither Wind nor Frost may in the least offend them, and they'll keep all Winter for your Use, and so you'll always be ready furnished.

Some, in the Morning they go to Angle, boil those they intend to use that day in Milk or Water, one or two Minutes, and then pour them

them on a Sieve, but they'll not keep after boiling above two days: In like manner, you may boil the Brood of Wasps, Hornets, Humble-bees, &c. and they'll thereby become something tougher, and look well on the Hook, as more plump, white, and be more tough; and some put these Baits in a little Earth and Honey, the day before they Angle with them, for Carp or Bream, &c. or put them in a Box with Gum Ivy.

Cowturd-bob, or Clap-bait.

§ 10. The other Bob is found under a Cow-turd (from about *May-day* until *Michaelmas*) that rests on such a Ground as the other is found in, and is also called a Clap-bait in some places; 'tis an excellent Bait for Trout, if you Angle with it as a Cod-bait is used, on the top of the Water with a bristled Hook, only you may sometimes put a pair of Artificial Wings and Head, such as is used for the Dub-fly, on the top of the Hook. This Bait is almost like a Gentle, but bigger, and is kept in wet Moss, but above 3 or 4 days it will not keep in Moss; therefore keep it as you are directed to keep a Cod-bait, at *Chap. 3. Sect. 16.* in Withy Bark.

Fish of all sorts likewise take the Clap-bait, within the Water, as the Trout, Salmon Smelt, Grayling, Chub, Roch, Dace, Carp, Bream, Tench, &c. For Trout and Salmon Smelt,

I think, you may imitate it with yellow Beeswax, and Angle at top therewith; having an Artificial, or Dub Head and Wings at top of the Hook.

*Cod bait, Cadis worm, Cad bait, or
Cafe-worm*

§ 11. Are all one and the same Bait, and of these there are 2 sorts, some say 3, one bred under Stones that lie a little hollow in shallow Rivers, or small Brooks, in a very fine gravelly Cafe or Husk; these are yellow when ripe; and are the best sort of Cod-bait, and are bigger than a Gentle, having a black, or, at least, a blackish Head.

The other sort are found in Pits, Ponds, slow-running Rivers or Ditches, in Cafes or Husks of Water-weeds, Sticks, Straw or Rushes; and are called by some, a Straw-worm or Ruffcoat. Both these sorts are excellent Baits for Trout, Graylings, and most sorts of Fish, as Carp, Tench, Bream, Chub, Roch, Dace, Salmon Smelts, and Bleak.

The green sort breed in Pits, Ponds, and Ditches, are found in *March*, before the yellow ones come; the other yellow sort come in *May*, or the end of *April*, and are out of Season in *July*; a third sort, but smaller, come in again in *August*.

§ 12. These

§ 12. These Cod-baits cannot endure the Wind and Cold; therefore keep them in a thick Woollen Bag with some moist Gravel or Sand amongst them, got out of the same River, Rill or Brook, the Cod-baits you get were bred in; wet them once a day, if in the House, but oftener in hot Weather; when you carry them forth, fill the Bag full of Water, then hold the mouth close, that they drop not out, and so let the Water run from them: Thus they have been kept 3 Weeks: Or you may put them in an earthen Pot full of Water, with some of the Gravel they were bred in, at the bottom, and take them forth into your Bag, as you have occasion to use them: But the best way of keeping them, is as before is directed at *Chap. 3. Sect. 16.*

*Various Ways of Angling with the
Cod-bait.*

§ 13. One may Angle several ways with Cod-baits, either at bottom with a Float, or within a Foot of the bottom at mid-water, or at top: But if in a clear Water for the Trout, Grayling, or Salmon Smelt, use fine and smallest Lines never above one Hair for 2 or 3 Lengths next Hook, &c. Your Lines are to be almost length of Rod, and very light Lead-ed, if you Angle within the Water: Sometimes you may (when you use a Float) put on 2 or

or 5 together ; and sometimes Cod-bait, to very great effect, is joined with a Worm, and sometimes to an Artificial Fly to cover the point of the Hook ; and sometimes it's put on the point of a Hook after an Oak-fly, and then they dib with it, or, which I like better, to let them sink 9 or 10 Inches within the Water, continually raising, and gently moving it up and down within the Water, and at top. Some say Cod-bait, when used by it self, is always to be Angled with at the bottom, and with the finest Tackle ; and that it is for all times of the Year the most holding Bait of all other whatever, both for Trout, Salmon Smelt and Grayling : Others there are, that affirm, the best way to Angle with the Cod-bait, is to Fish with it on the top of the Water for Trout, Grayling, or Salmon Smelt, as you do with the Fly ; and it must stand on the shank of the Hook, as doth the Artificial Fly, (for if it come into the bent of the Hook, the Fish will little or not at all value it, nor if you pull the blew Gut out of it) and to make it keep that place, you must, when you set on, or whip your Hook, fasten a stiff Horse-hair, or Hogs-bristle under the Silk, with the end standing out about a Straws breadth at the head of the Hook, from under the Silk, and pointing towards the Line, (which, by the way, let me tell you, is called a bristled Hook when thus arm'd or whip'd) and this will keep it either from slipping totally off, or from sliding back into

into the bent of the Hook, by which means your whipping would be left naked and bare, and is neither so slightly nor so likely to be taken; to remedy which, (because it often so falls out) some always whip the Hook they design for this Bait, with the whitest Horse-hair, which it self will resemble and shine like that Bait, and consequently do more good, or less harm than whipping with Silk or any other colour: Thus used, it's an excellent Bait for a Trout, Salmon Smelt or Grayling. You may, if you please, place a small slender Lead upon the shank of the Hook, to sink the Bait, and draw the Cod-bait over the Lead. You may also use to Angle with a Cod-bait, as a Dub-fly, if you put on the very top of the shank of the Hook, a pair of Artificial Wings, and a little below a Bristle, to keep up the Bait from slipping back.

Artificial Cod bait.

You may make, for Trouts and Salmon Smelts, an Artificial or Counterfeit Cod-bait, by making the body of yellow Bees-wax, and the Head of black Dubbing and black Silk; or you may do it by making the body of yellow wash Leather, or rather Shammy or Buff, and the Head of black Silk.

Some Persons make the Counterfeit Cod-bait of yellow Bees-wax, with an Artificial black dub'd Head, and a pair of Wings at the Head, and

and Angle therewith as at the Dub-fly. If you imitate the Cod-bait with yellow Bees-wax, and make the Head of black Dubbing and black Silk, and perform the same very artificially, it's an incomparable Bait for Troutts and Salmon Smelts. These you may often let sink to the bottom, and immediately raise again to the top. Some melt yellow Bees-wax, and therein dip yellow Crewel often, and then wrap this about the shank of the Hook, and put a Head on, as before is taught, &c. And some make use of a piece of a small yellow Wax Candle, to imitate the Cod-bait, and put a dub'd Head and Wings on the top of the Hook.

Those Cod-baits that are Natural, are most excellent Baits for Troutts, Graylings, Salmon Smelts, Chubs, Roch, Dace, Pearch, Carp, Tench, Ruff, Bream and Bleak; and the Artificial Cod-bait is for Troutts and Salmon Smelts only; and Troutts take the Cod-bait in clear Waters only, but never in muddy Waters; so do Salmon Smelts.

You may bait the Natural Cod-bait, as is directed for the Bark-worm, in the next *Set.* if you use but one only. Cod-baits, when they are full ripe, turn into Flies of several sorts, as the Cod-baits are, especially into the Green-drake, &c.

Bark-worm, or Ash grub

§ 14. Are all one and the same, and are plump, milk-white, bent round from Head to Tail, and exceeding tender, with a red Head, resembling a young Dore or Humble-bee ; it is in Season all the Year, especially from *Michaelmas* until mid *May* or *June*. It's the most proper Bait save any but the Fly and Cod-bait for the Grayling ; and Chub, Roch and Dace will likewise take it.

It's found under the Bark of an Oak, Ash, Alder or Birch, especially if they lie a Year or more after they are fallen : Likewise it's found in the body of a rotted Alder, if you break it with an Axe ; but be careful only to shake the Tree in pieces with beating, and crush not the Worm ; you may also find it under the Bark of the stump of a Tree, if decayed.

He is very tender, therefore to be baited on such a bristled Hook as before is directed for the Cod-bait ; and he's to be baited thus, *viz.* The Hook is to be put in under the Head or Chaps of the Bait, and guided down the middle of the Belly, without suffering it to peep out by the way, (for then it will issue out Water and Milk, till nothing but the Skin remain, and the bent of the Hook will appear black through it) till the point of the Hook come so low, that the Head of the Bait may rest and stick on the Bristle that comes out to hold it ;

it; by which means it can neither slip off it self, neither will the force of the Stream, nor quick pulling out on any mistake, strip it off. This Bait is usually kept in Wheat-bran, and thereby grows tougher.

For Grayling you are to Angle with this Bait, with the smalleſt Lines, ſuch as is direc-
ted for a Trout, with a running Line in a
clear Water; and you are always to uſe a
Float, and the leaſt weight of Plumb or Lead
you can, that will but ſink, and that the
ſwiftneſs of the Stream will allow; and your
Bait is always to be 7 or 8 Inches from the
bottom: But for other Fish, as Chub, Roch,
Dace, you may uſe Lines and Tackle proper
for them, and Angle as is ſuitable for their
Humor.

I am very apt to think that Tench, Bream,
Carp and Bleak will likewiſe very well take
the Aſh-grub; but having never experienced
them for theſe Fish, I dare not be poſitive, but
refer you to your own Trials.

Flag-worm, or Dock-worm

§ 15. Are all one; to find them do thus: Go to an old Pond or Pit, where there are ſtores of Flags, (or, as ſome call them, Sedges) pull ſome up by the Roots, then shake thoſe Roots in the Water, till all the Mud and Dirt be wafhed away from them, then amongſt the ſmall Strings or Fibres that grow to the Roots,

you'll

you'll find little Husks or Cases of a reddish or yellowish, and some of other colours; open these carefully with a Pin, and you'll find in them a little small Worm, pale, yellow, or white as a Gentle, but longer and slenderer, with rows of Feet all down his Belly, and a red Head. This is an exceeding good Bait for Graylings, Tench, Bream, Carp, Roch and Dace. I am prone likewise to think it may do well for Chub, Bleak and Pearch.

If you pull the Flags in funder) and cut open the round Stalk, you'll also find a Worm like the former in the Husk, but tougher, and in that respect better: Both these Worms are to be kept in Wheat-bran, and baited on the bristled Hook, as the Ash-grub; and when you Angle for Graylings with them, use a Float, and the smallest Lines, and the Bait to be 8 or 9 Inches from the Ground. A Trout rarely takes either Ash grub or Flag-worm.

Gentles, or Maggots.

§ 16. Gentles are kept with dead Flesh, Beasts Liver, or Suet; or, which is better, keep, cleanse, or scour them in Meal or Wheat-bran: You may breed them by pricking a Beasts Liver full of holes; hang it in the Sun in Summer time, and set under an old course Barrel or small Firkin, with Clay and Bran in it; into which they will drop and fall, and therein cleanse themselves, and be always ready

ready for Use; and thus Gentles may be created until *Michaelmas*; but if you would Fish with them from *Michaelmas* to *May-day*, then get a dead Cat, Kite, or other Carrion, at the latter end of *September*, and let it be Fly-blown, and when the Gentles begin to be alive, stir or creep, then bury it and them in soft, moist Earth, deep in the Ground, that the Frost neither injure nor kill them, and they'll serve to use till *March* or *April* following, about which time they'll turn to be Flics, commonly called *Flesh-flies*.

Gentles are sometimes added to a Worm, and sometimes put on the point of a Dub-fly Hook, for Salmon Smelts, but most commonly they are used by themselves, and that 2 or 3 on the Hook at a time; sometimes when you go to Fish with Gentles, put them in a Horn (wherein are small holes bored to let in Air) with some Wheat-bran only; and some shave some of a Barber's sweet Wash-ball into the Bran; but the best things to put Gentles to, is to put them, the day you Angle, in a Box, with some Gum-Ivy, and you'll find it of no small effect, if you frequently try it.

. Others anoint the Horn wherein the Gentles are, in Bran, with Hony; and others perfume the Horn wherein they are kept, with Musk and Civet. You may imitate a Gentle with white Jersey Wooll, if you be mindful to join it to another Bait or Fly for Salmon Smelts, when you Angle at top for them.

Gentles

Gentles are singular good Baits for Roch, Dace, Chub, Carp, Tench, Barbel, Bream and Bleak ; and a Gudgeon and Trout will sometimes take them in some Rivers and Seasons, if the Water be clear.

Sheeps Blood.

§ 17. Dry it in the Air upon a Board or Trencher, till it becomes pretty hard, then cut it into small pieces, proportioned for the size of the Hook, some add a little Salt to it, which keeps it from growing black, and say, it makes it not worse, but better : It's a good Bait for Chub, Roch, and Dace, if rightly ordered.

Grain, Wheat, Malt.

§ 18. When you use Grain, as Wheat, Malt, &c. boil it soft in Milk, or which is liked better, in Sweet-wort, and peel off the outward rind, which is the Bran, and then use it ; or if you will, you may fry it in Hony and Milk, or steep it in some strong-scented Oyls, as Amber, Spike, Polypody, Ivy, Annise, Turpentine, Oyl of Peter, &c. for Fish can smell, else Nature in vain had bestowed Nostrils on them, which were ridiculous to think. Grain is a good Bait either in Winter or Summer, for Chub, Roch, Dace and Bleak. That Fish can smell few doubt ; but what sort of

E Smells

Smells they most delight in, or covet, that's the great Question, and so ambiguous, that it's not yet perfectly known, whether sweet, or ill-scented.

Ant fly

§ 19. When the Ant-fly is plentifullest (which is in the end of June, July, August, and most of September) go to the Ant-hills, or Mole hills, where they breed, take a great handful of the Earth, with as much of the roots of the Grass that growtheth on those Hill-lucks, put all into a large glafs Bottle, then gather a great quantity of the blackest Ant-flies, their bodies and wings to be so choicely handled, as not to be in the least bruised; put them into a Bottle or Firkin (if you would keep them long) first washed with Hony, or Water and Hony. These in any stream and clear water, are a deadly Bait for Roch, Dace and Chub; and you must Angle with them under the water, no less than a handful from the bottom.

Take an Ant-fly or May-fly, (perhaps any other Fly may serve your turn) sink him with a little Lead to the bottom, near to the Piles, Posts of a Bridge, Posts of a Weir, or Flood-gate, or any other deep places, where Roches lie quietly, and then pull your Fly up very leisurely, and usually a Roch will follow your Bait, to the very top of the water, and gaze

on

on it there, and run at it, and take it, lest the Fly escape him. The Ant-fly may be kept alive, as is before directed, two or three Months; and Ant-flies are not altogether of the very same colour, some being blackish, others reddish, &c.

I presume, it will be no unpleasant Digression to acquaint the Reader what a few Observations some have made on this small, but naturally wise, industrious, and providently politick Creature, the Ant, or Pismite, of which our Ant-fly is bred: It's observ'd to gather its Food in Summer, in the Full, and rests in the New Moons: They are like a Commonwealth, and gather Corn, which they dry, and bite at both ends, that they may not grow: They wear away Stones by their assiduity, and make beaten Roadways; they help one another in drawing their Burdens, dam out water, and bury their dead. The Greater lead the way, and the Lesser drag the Corn; and, when dirty, they cleanse themselves before they enter into their Habitations: They teach the Young to labour, but expel the Idle and Slothful; and when they carry their Grain, it's said to be a Sign of foul weather. They cast up the Earth over the mouth of their Caves (that the water may not enter in) wherein they have three Cells; in the one they live, in another they breed and bury, and in the third, they keep their Corn. They generate in Winter, bring forth Eggs, which,

in the Spring, are Ants: When old, they grow winged, and then suddenly after die.

Young Brood of Wasps, Hornets, and Humble-Bees.

§ 20. Dry them on a Fire-shovel or Tile-stone, or in an Oven, cooling after baking, lest they burn, and to avoid that, lay them on a thin board or chip, and cover them with another, so supported as not to crush them, or else clap two Cakes together; this way they will keep long, and stick on the Hook well: if you boil them a minute or two in water or milk, they grow black in three or four Days, but are good for present Use: These are singular good Baits for Roch, Dace, Chub, Eel, Bream, Flounder; and you may try them for Carp, Tench, Barbel and Bleak, which, I fancy, will scarce refuse them. Some use Wasps, Hornets and Humble-bees, when their legs and wings are a very little grown forth, especially for the Chub. The stinging of Hornets is cured by Venice-treacle taken inwardly, and applying outwardly Cow-dung and Fasting-spittle. Hornets breed out of the harder parts of Horse-flesh, as Wasps out of the softer. The sting of Wasps is worse than that of Bees, and is cured by application of Cow-dung mixed with Barley-meal, or Leaven mixt with Oyl and Vinegar. Understand, that

that it's the old Hornets and Wasps, &c. only that can sting, which frequently happens when their Nests are taken; but the young brood of them, which are for the Baits, are not capable to sting.

Salmon Spawn.

§ 21. Is a very good Bait for Chub, and in some Rivers for Trout: Take the Spawn, and boil it so hard as to stick on the Hook, and then use it, or not boiled at all, is used by some. Others take the Spawn and put good store of Salt to it, and hang the same in a Linnen bag, in the Kitchin, but far off the Fire, and it will be hard, and then they steep it, the Night before it is used, in Strong waters: Some expert Anglers preserve Salmon Spawn, from pining, with Salt, or discolouring with moisture, by laying it upon Wool, in a Pot, one layr of Spawn and another of Wool, to the filling of the Pot; and 'tis a lovely Bait for the Winter and Spring, especially if used where Salmons use to spawn; for thither the Fish are gathered, and there expect it.

Minnow, Loach, and Bull Head.

§ 22. Are Baits for Pike, Pearch, Chub, Eel and great Trout. The Trout takes these Baits about a foot within the water, and sometimes lower in the deeps, in the day time, in

March, April and September, when the wind is in the South, West, or South-west, and bloweth strongly, curling the Waters, and raising high waves thereon. In Summer Months (that is, from the middle of *April*, until the end of *August*, according to the Computation of *Anglers*) he takes them not in the day time, unless the day be dark, and the wind high, and blustering; and then you must add some Lead to the Line, and sink these Baits to the bottom; for the Trout will not take them at mid-water, in a clear water, in Summer, in the day time; but in the night, at night Hooks, he'll take them from the beginning of *March*, until *Michaelmas*. Pike, Pearch, and Chub will take them either by day or night, only the Chub values them not so much in the day, as the night, in the four hot Months, viz. *May, June, July, and August*. But both Pike, Pearch, Chub, Trout and Eel, take them exceeding well in the night, at night Hooks, from *March* the first, until after *Michaelmas*. Minnows of a middle size, and whitish, are the best. And though Minnows be good Baits, as aforesaid, for Pike, Pearch, Chub, Trout and Eel, yet Experience assures me, that a small Loach, or Bull-head, his guill fins being cut off, are better than Minnows by many degrees. When you Angle with Minnow, small Loach or Bull-head, for Trout, be sure that the Bait turn quick, and be always in motion and in a clear water; stick the Hook thorough the back fin
of

of a Minnow, or put the Hook into his upperlip, and keep him about mid-water, or a little lower, by the assistance of a Float; for Pearch. *Vid. cap. 26.*

Lamprey, Pride, or Seven-Eyes

§ 23. Are all one, and like unto small Eels, no thicker than a Straw, and may be found in sandy, muddy heaps, in Rivers near the side, almost as easily as worms in a dung-hill, and are good Baits either by night or day, for Chubs and Eels, and so are likewise the small brood of Eels for Chubs.

Snails

§ 24. Both the white and black Snail, his Belly slit, that the white appear, are good Baits for the Chub, very early in the morning, but in the heat of the day he cares not for them. Trout and Eels will likewise take them at the night Hook, in the night.

Grass-hopper and Cricket

§ 25. Grass-hopper is a Creature, having no mouth, only a pipe in the Breast, by which it sucks in Dew, of which it lives. The Ancients (as is said) used to eat them. There are two, if not three sorts of them, not differing in shape, but colour; the one is green-coloured, the other dun, and a third yellowish

green on the body. They are principally found in green Meadows and Grasfs; and Fish take them best in the latter end of June, all July and August: Cut off their legs and outward wings, the middle size are best. For Trout or Grayling, you may lead your Hook on the shank, with a slender plate of Lead, made narrowest and slenderest at the bent of the Hook, that the plate may come over it, then draw him over the Lead, after put a lesser or a Cod bait on the point, and keep your Bait in continual motion, lifting it up, and sinking again; pull off the Grasfs-hoppers uppermost wings and legs. A Chub will likewise very well take this Bait.

Others, and very expert Anglers too, use, with good success, only the tail, or half of the Grasfs-hopper, putting on the Hook first, a young Beetle, or Sharn-bud, which is found in a Cow-turd of a day or two old, and they take off the higher hard wings, and then she puts forth a long pair, coloured like those of the Pad-fly: This is in a close water, and which breeds a large Trout, is as killing a Bait as any whatever; but 'tis not so good in a shallow, very clear and open River, by the Opinion of many. You may dib with a Grasfs-hopper, either for Chub or Trout; the green Grasfs-hopper is most used by some.

There is likewise a House-cricket, which is a winged Insect, like a Grasfs-hopper, lives in Chimneys and warm places, and sings almost

con-

continually, and is said by some to be a good Bait for Chubs, if you dib therewith; or permit it to sink within the water.

Water-cricket, Water lowse, or Creeper.

§ 26. Are all one, and are excellent good for a Trout, in *March* and *April*, or sometimes in *May*, in some Rivers. They are found under Stones that lie hollow in the water, and you may fish with them within half a foot or a foot of the bottom; others let it drag on the ground; and others, and expert Anglers too, affirm, that if you dibble in the streams, about noon, on a Sun-shiny day, and so for two or three hours therewith in the month of *April*, for Trouts, that 'tis a murthering Bait, 'tis always to be used in a clear water, and is not to be found in every River: It commonly is bred in very stony Rivers, and not in those that calmly glide on Sand, and champaign Grounds. These Creepers always turn into Stone-flies about *May-day*.

Lip-berries.

§ 27. Whose true name is *Aron-berries*, or Berries of *Cookow-pants*, or *Wake-Robin*: These Berries proceed from the Herb *Aron*, and are ripe and fit for use in *July* and *August*, and are of a lovely, transparent Red, or Orange-colour: They are good Baits for Rock, and especially Chub. Any Apothecary or Herb-woman

man will shew you the Herb in *May*, and do you look for the Berries or Fruit in *July* and *August*. You may put four or five on the Hook at a time for the Chub.

*Cherries, Ras-berries, Black-berries, and
Mul-berries*

§ 28. Are Baits for Chubs, and they will take them best in Ponds or Rivers, where such Trees grow near the water, and such Fruit customarily drop into them; sometimes a Carp will take them.

Oat-cake, or Cheese

§ 29. Are good Baits to Angle with for Chub, Roch, Dace and Barbel, when you use a ledger Bait: Your Gheese may be kept a day or two (if it be not new, which it ought to be) in a wet linnen Cloth, or steeped a little in Hony.

To keep Baits for the Pike, or Night-Hooks.

§ 30. Carry Baits for the Pike, as small Roch, Dace, Gudgeon, Bleak, Loach, Salmon Smelt, Minnow, Smelt (or as we call it in

in Lancashire Sparling or Spurlin) small Trout, small Pearch, (his back fins cut off) and small Eels in Wheat-bran, which will dry up the slimy moisture that is on them, and so keep them longer, and cause them stick more firmly on the Hook; besides, there is a green watery substance or humour that issueth out of Fish, which will infect and rot them; but the Bran dryeth up the same, and preventeth that mischief.

Oak fly, Ash fly, or Woodcock fly

§ 31. Is call'd by all these names, in different places, and is a very good Fly, from the beginning of *May*, until the end of *August*: It's a brownish Fly, and found on the body of an Oak, or Ash, and stands frequently with his head downwards, towards the root of the Tree; 'tis very proper for a Trout, and the best way to use it, is to put one on the Hook length ways, and sometimes two (or, as you are directed, to bait the *May-fly* for dibbing, cap. 33.) and if you put it on length ways, put at the point of the Hook a Cod-bait, and let them sink 6 inches, or a foot, into the water, and then raise it again gently, having a short dibbing Line, and it's a deadly Bait for a Trout in a clear water; and sometimes instead of a Cod-bait, use an Oak-worm, or green Grub, got off an Haw-thorn: Some dub it with black Wool, and *Isabella* coloured Mohair, and bright brownish Bears-hair, wrapt on

on with yellow Silk, but the head of an Ash colour. Others dub it with an Orange, tawny and black ground: Others with blackish Wool and gold Twist about it. The wings must be the brown of a Mallards Feather, if you could but dub it aright, there would be no need of the natural one for a Trout.

Stone fly and Green-drake.

§ 32. I shall say nothing of them here, because I shall exactly describe them when I come to Dub-fly Angling, chap. 35.

Hawthorn fly.

§ 33. Is a black Fly, to be found on every Hawthorn bush, soon after the Leaves are come forth, and is a Fly to be used for dibbing in some Rivers for Trouts, &c.

Fish eyes.

§ 34. Pull out the Eyes of those Fish you catch, and put them on the Hook, and they are an excellent Bait for most sorts of Fish; the like is said of Fish-livers.

Frogs.

§ 35. The yellowish bright Frogs, that are found in June and July, in green Meadows, are

are good Baits for Chubs, Pikes and Pearches. Put your Hook through the skin of his Leg, towards the upper part of it. Use a small Frog for Pearch and Chub. The French eat the hinder part of the green Frog: I believe none will rob them of the Dainty.

Great Moth

§ 36. Has a very great head, not unlike to an Owl, with whitish wings, and yellowish body: You may find them flying abroad in Summer Evenings, in Gardens, some wind stirring. This Fly the Chub delights in very much, and you are to dibble therewith.

Fat Bacon

§ 37. Is affirm'd by some to be a very good Bait for Chub and Pike, in the Winter months (that is, from the end of *August*, until the beginning of *April*, according to Anglers Computation) at Snap especially.

The Earwig

§ 38. Is commended by some, to be a good Bait for Salmon Smelts. They are to be got by laying a white Linnen Cloath, or a Cows Hoof, in a Garden hedge, a night or two: Use them within the water, near bottom.

Black Bee

§ 39. Is a great black Fly, that breeds in Clay walls, and is good for the Chub. Some cut off his Legs and upper Wings.

Fern fly, or Fern bud

§ 40. Is a thick, short Fly, and is to be found on Fern, from about *May*-day, until the end of *August*, or later. This Fly hath a thick short body, and two pair of wings, the uppermost are hard, and red on one side; but the undermost are tender, diaphanous and blackish: We often take off the uppermost wings, and dibble with this Fly. A Trout will take it about ten days together, in some part of *May*; but the Chub takes them all Summer.

**Pith, or Marrow, in an Ox, Cow, Calf,
or Sheeps Back-bone.**

§ 41. Take out the white Pith of an Ox, Cow, &c. Back-bone carefully; and be very tender in taking off the tough outward skin of those in an Ox or Cows Back-bone; but be sure you leave the inward and tender white skin safe and untouched, or your labour is lost. This is an excellent Bait for a Chevin all Winter long; and so is the Brains of an Ox or Cow,

Cow, either for Winter or Summer, and the Pith aforesaid is a good Bait for Eels at Night Hooks.

A Rule about Baits

§ 42. Fish take all sorts of Baits most eagerly and freely, and with the least suspition or bogling, when you present the same unto them in such order and manner as Nature affords them, or as they themselves ordinarily gather them; and some are peculiar to certain Countries and Rivers, of which every Angler may in his own place make his proper obseruation; as some of the foregoing Baits will be taken in some particular Rivers, and not in others, and the same Baits are taken earlier in some Rivers than others, and sooner or later in some Years than others, according to the quality and season of the Year; although ground Baits in general are useful and certain almost in every River, yet so is not the Fly, which varies in colour, kind, shape, or proportion, almost in every River, nay, in the very same River, at five or six miles distance.

There may be perhaps many other Baits which the Author hath no knowledge of, but yet he will be bold to say, that these are the chief, and sufficient for the expertest Angler to understand. In the River *Thames* Anglers for Roch use a Periwinkle, which they gather in the *Thames* in Shells, they break the Shells and

and take the Periwinkle whole, (for if broken it's spoil'd) and that part which sticks to the Shell they cut off from the Fish, and leave it sticking to the Shell, and bait their Hooks with the other, (possibly a small white Snail may serve in lieu thereof, it's like it) and this Periwinkle is much used about *London Bridge* for Roch.

§ 43. Shrimps taken out of the Shell are good Baits for Pike and Chub. The white Blite with much Seed, by some call'd All-seed, is a very acceptable Bait to Fish, say *Lovell* and *Coles* in their Herbals.

§ 44. Let all the Baits for the Pike be alive the same Morning you use them, for if they be stale, and not fresh and sweet, he values them not. The very chief Baits for him are the large Gudgeon, Roch, small Dace, Bleak, young Jack, a piece of an Eel, a large Minnow, Loach, in Hay-time a bright, yellow Frog, the Pearch, all his Fins cut off, may be used for want of others, but it's the very worst Bait of any, for the Pike hath an Antipathy against him; a young Trout and Salmon Smelt are good Baits also.

C H A P. V.

Of Pastes.

This Chapter treats only of Pastes, which might have been comprehended under the general notion of Baits, yet since they are Artificial ones, and to be Angled with at Ground or within the water, I judg'd it best to discourse of them separately in a Chapter by themselves; and although there are, or may be, as many and distinct Pastes as the luxuriancy of every Fancy will suggest, yet the subsequent are of best estimation.

Pastes.

§ 1. Take Bean-flower, and if that be not to be got, then Wheat-flower, and the tenderest part of the Leg of a young Rabbet, Whelp or Catling, as much Virgins Wax and Sheeps Suet; beat them in a Mortar till they be perfectly incorporated, then with a little clarified Hony temper them before the Fire into a Paste; some omit the Bean and Wheat-flower, and others omit the Virgins Wax and Sheeps suet, only when they use it for Carps.

§ 2. With Crumbs of white bread and Hony, make with clean Hands, a Paste for Carp and Tench.

§ 3. Of the Crumbs of pure fine Manchet, and a little Water, make a Paste, with clean Hands, for Roch and Dace.

§ 4. Beat Mutton Kidney Suet and soft new Cheese into a Paste, for for Barbel in *August*.

§ 5. Take the strongest Cheese pounded in a Mortar, with a little Butter and Saffron, (so much of it as being beaten small will turn it to a Lemon colour) and make a Paste for Chubs in Winter.

§ 6. Take Sheeps Kidney Suet, as much Cheese, fine Flower or Manchet, make it into a Paste, and allay its stiffness with clarified Hony.

§ 7. Take Sheeps Blood, Cheese, fine Manchet, clarified Hony, make all into a Paste.

§ 8. Take Cherries, (the Stones being taken out) Sheeps Blood, fine Manchet, and Saffron to colour it with, and make a Paste.

§ 9. Take the fattest old Cheese, and strongest of the Rennet, Mutton Kidney Suet, Wheat-flower and Anniseed Water, (and if for Chub add some roasted Bacon;) beat all very small into a Paste.

§ 10. Take the fattest old Cheese, and strongest of the Rennet, Mutton Kidney Suet, and Turmerick reduced into a fine Powder; work all into a Paste, add the Turmerick only till the paste become of a very fine, lovely, yellow colour; this is excellent for Chevin.

§ 11. Take Flower made of fine Manchet, and

and Butter, and Saffron to colour it, and make
a Paste for Roch and Dace.

Observations on Paste.

§ 12. In September and all Winter Months,
when you Angle for Chub, Carp, and Bream
with Paste, let the bait be as big as a large
Hazle-nut; but for Roch and Dace, the big-
ness of an ordinary bean is sufficient.

§ 13. You may add to any Paste *Affa-fetida*,
Oyl of Polipody of the Oak, Oyl of Ivy, Oyl of
Petre, or the Gum the Ivy, and many other
things, and try whether they will increase
your Sport.

§ 14. Into all sorts of Pastes whatsoever,
beat a little Cotton-wooll, shaved Lint, or
fine Flax, which will make it stick well on the
Hook, and not easily wash off: And if you
would have the Paste keep long, put Virgin-
wax, and clarified Hony into it.

§ 15. When you Angle with Paste, or any
small tender bait, have a small Hook, quick
Eye, a nimble, Hand and Rod; and that
somewhat stiff too, or both bait and Fish are
lost; and, you must strike at the very first
time you perceive them bite or nibble.
Pastes are to be used in Pits, Ponds, Meares,
or slow running Rivers only. Note, that this
Rule is general, and holds in all very tender
baits.

§ 16. When you Angle with Paste, or any
F 2
very

very tender bait, use a Float of Quill, rather than of Corks ; because Corks will not so easily dip under Water, nor the bite so soon be perceived.

§ 17. Paste is a very good bait for Chub, Roch, Dace, Barbel, Carp, Tench, Bream and Bleak.

C H A P. VI.

Ointments to Allure Fish to the Bait.

Next follow Ointments and Receipts, which I have read and been informed of, by several knowing Anglers, and are practised for the better furtherance of this Sport ; and some have such confidence, that they affirm they'll not only allure, but even compel Fish to bite. Part of the following Receipts I have Experienced, and though I found them in some measure advantagious to my Recreation, yet far from so high a degree, as has been pretended to me : Nevertheless I shall present you with them ; and if you'll be at the expence and labour of a Tryal, you may elect those for your daily use, which on your own Experience you find to be the best : And the first shall be one highly commended

by

by Monsieur *Charras*, (Operator and Apothecary Royal to the present French King, *Lewis the Fourteenth*) in his *Pharmacopœia*, printed at *London*, Part the Second, f. 245.

§ 1. Take Man's Fat and Cat's Fat, of each half an Ounce, Mummy finely powdred three Drams, Cummin-seed finely powdred one Dram, distill'd Oyl of Annise and Spike, of each six Drops, Civet two grains, and Camphor four Grains, make an Ointment according to Art; and when you Angle anoint 8 Inches of the Line next the Hook therewith, and keep it in a Pewter box, made something taper: And when you use this Ointment, never Angle with les than 2 or 3 hairs next Hook, because if you Angle with 1 Hair, it will not stick so well to the Line; but if you will mix some of this Oyntment, with a little *Venice Turpentine*, it will then stick very well to your Line; but clog not your Line with too much on at a time.

§ 2. Take Gum-Ivy, and put thereof a good quantity into a Box made of Gak, (such as Apothecaries use of White-wood, and long for Pills) and chafe and rub the inside of the Box with this Gum, and when you Angle put 3 or 4 Worms therein, letting them remain but a short time, (for if long it kills them) and then take them out, and Fish with them, putting more in their stead, out of the Worm-bag and Moss; and thus do all Day.

§ 3. Gum-Ivy is a tear which drops from
F 2 the

the body of the larger Ivy, being wounded, and is of a yellowish red colour, of a strong scent and sharp taste; that which is sold in the Shops is Counterfeit and Adulterate, and generally no such thing. Therefore to get Gum-Ivy, at *Michaelmas* or Spring, drive several great Nails into large Ivy stalks, and wriggle the same till they become very loose, and let them remain, and a Gum will issue thereout. Slit in the Spring and at *Michaelmas* several great Ivy stalks, and visit them once a Month, to see if Gum flow from the wounded part: This Gum is Excellent for the Angler's Use.

§ 4. Take *Affa-fætida* half an Ounce, Camphor two Drams, bray them well together with some Drops of Oyl Olive, and put it in a Pewter box, and use it as the first Receipt of this Chapter. Some instead of Oyl Olive, use the Chymical Oyl of Lavender and Camomil: and some add the quantity of a Nutmeg of *Venice* Turpentine to it. But that which I generally used for a Trout in a muddy Water, and for Gudgeons in a clear Water, is thus compounded; viz. *By Affa-fætida* three Drams, Camphor one Dram, *Venice* Turpentine one Dram; bray altogether with some Drops of the Chymical Oyl of Lavender, or for want thereof, with Oyl of Spike; and use it as the first Receipt of this Chapter.

Camphor is a resinous Gum, partly flowing of its own accord, but chiefly by incision, from

from a tall Tree growing in *India*; the *Bornean Camphor* is best: Chuse the White, clear like Crystal, strong scented, will easily crumble between the Fingers, and is brittle, and being fired will scarcely be quenched. There is a Counterfeit or Fictitious sort, that put into a hot Loaf will parch, but the true will melt. It will keep many years in Flax-seed, if it be not exposed to the Air, otherwise it will evaporate and consume to nothing.

Assa-fœtida grows in *Media, Libya, Syria*, and is a Gummy Juice of Lafer, Laferpitium, or Sylphyon, gathered from the root or stalk cut: Chuse that which is pure, fine, clammy, and smelling almost like Garlick; and not dry, or foul with sticks, in colour like the best Myrrh; it will keep good many years, but it is often Counterfeited or Adulterated, by mixing Meal, Bran and the Gum Sagapenum together.

§ 5. Take *Venice Turpentine*, and best Hive-honey, and Oyl of Polypody of the Oak, drawn by Retort; mix all together, and use it as the first Receipt of this Chapter.

§ 6. Take Oyl of Ivy-berries, made by Expression or Infusion, and put some in a box, and use it as is directed in the second Receipt of this Chapter.

§ 7. Dissolve Gum-Ivy in the Oyl of Spike, and anoint the bait therewith. Mr. *Walton* prescribes this for a Pike.

§ 8. Put Camphor into the Moss, wherein are the worms the day you Angle.

§ 9. Dissolve two Ounces of Gum-Ivy, in a Gill of Spring-water; then mix these together in the like quantity of the Oyl of sweet Almonds, then take what quantity of Worms you intend to use that day (first well scoured in Moss) and put them in Linnen Thrums, first well washed in Spring-water, and squeezed; then wet the same Thrums in this Composition, and put the Thrums and Worms in a Linnen Bag, and use them.

§ 10. Take *Affafetida* three Drams, Spike-nard of Spain one Dram; put them in a pint of Spring-water, let them stand in a shady place fourteen days in the Ground; then take it out, and drain it through a Linnen Cloth, and put to the Liquor one Dram of *Sperma ceti*, and keep it close in a strong Glass-bottle; and when you go to Angle, take what quantity of worms you intend to use that day (the worms being first well scoured in Moss) and put them upon a pewter Saucer, and pour a little of this water upon them; then put them in the Moss again, and use them.

§ 11. Take Juice of Camomil half a spoonful, Chymical Oyl of Spike one Dram, and Oyl of Comfrey by Infusion one Dram and an half, Goose-grease two Drams; these, being well dissolv'd over the Fire, let stand until cold, then put it in a strong Glass-bottle, which let be unstoppt three or four days, then stop it very

very well, and when you Angle, anoint the Bait therewith.

§ 12. Take a handful of Housleek, half a handful of inner-green Bark of the Ivy stalk; pound these well together, and press the Juice thereout, and wet your Moss therewith; and when you Angle, put six or eight worms therein out of the other bag, and when spent by fishing, do the like.

§ 13. Some use the Juice of Nettles and Housleek, as the last Receipt, and some only the Juice of Housleek.

§ 14. Some anoint their Bait with the Marrow got out of a Heron's Thigh-bone, and some use the Fat and Grease of a Heron.

§ 15. Take the Bones or Scull of a dead Man, at the opening of a Grave, and beat the same into powder, and put of this powder into the Moss wherein you keep your worms, but others like Grave-earth as well.

§ 16. Rx Of Man's Fat, Cats Fat, Herons Fat, and of the best *Affa-fatida*, of each two Drams, Mummy finely powdred two Drams, Cummin-feed finely powdred two Scruples, and of Camphor, Galbanum and Venice Turpentine, of each one Dram, Civet grains two; make according to Art, all into an indifferent thin Oyntment, with the Chymical Oyls of Lavender, Annise and Cammomil, of each an equal quantity; and keep the same in a narrow-mouthed and well-glazed Gallipot, close covered with a Bladder and Leather; and when

when you go to Angle, take some of it in small Pewter box, made taper, and anoint inches of the Line, next Hook, therewith, and when washed off, repeat the same.

This Ointment, which, for its Excellency, will call, *Unguentum Piscatorum mirabile*, prodigiously causes Fish to bite, if in the hand of an Artist, that Angles within water, and in proper Seasons and Times, and with suitable Tackie and baits, fit and proper for the River Season, and Fish he designs to catch. The Man's Fat you may get of the *London Chyrurgeons*, concerned in Anatomy, and the Herons Fat from the Poulters in *London*; the rest are to be had from Druggists, or Apothecaries. And this Composition will serve you two or three Summers Angling. I forbore (for some Reasons) to insert the same in my first Edition; but now, since it's divulged, value it not the less, but esteem it as a Jewel. They that would try other Experiments, not before inserted, and be curious, let them consult a Book call'd, *Modern Curiosities of Art and Nature*, pag. 178: But upon frequent Essays, this last hath the preheminence, and is found to Excel them all.

C H A P. VII.

General Directions and Observations.

§ 1. **L**E T the Anglers Apparel not be of a light shining or glittering colour, which will reflect upon the water, and affright away the Fish; but let it be of a sed, dark colour, and close to his body; for Fish are affrighted with any the least sight or motion; therefore by all means, keep out of sight, when you Angle in a clear water, either by sheltering behind some bush or Tree, or by standing as far off the Rivers side, you can possible; to effect this the better, a long Rod at Ground, and a long Rod and Line, at Artificial Fly, are absolutely necessary: Neither ought you to jump on the banks next the water, you Angle in; for of all Creatures there are few more sharp sighted, or fearful than Fish, especially Trout, Chubs and Carps.

§ 2. When you Angle at Ground in a clear Water, or dibble with natural Flies, Angle going up the River, but in a muddy Water, or with Dub-fly, Angle going down the River.

§ 3. Before you set out to Angle see that your baits be good, sweet, fine, and agreeable to

to the River and Season, and proper for the Fish you design to Angle for, and likewise your Tackle suitable and trim; for, if otherwise, you had better stay at home, because you'll not only tire and weary your self, but also lose your labour, which, if a young Angler, will be no small discouragement.

§ 4. Use Shoomakers wax to the Thread or Silk with which you make or mend either Rod or Fly, or whip Hooks; for it holds more firmly, and sticks better than any other.

§ 5. When you have hooked a great Fish, let him play and tire himself within the water, and have an especial care to keep the Rod bent, lest he run to the end of the Line and break either Hook or hold, and hale him not too near the top of the water, lest by flaskeing he break your Line.

§ 6. Angle for all sort of Fish whatever in such Rivers, and in that part of the River, where their haunts are described to be.

Fishes general Haunt:

§ 7. Where any Weeds, Roots of Trees, Stones, Wood, or other Rubbish are, it's often good, but troublsom Angling; for to such places Fishes resort for warmth and security, so likewise in Whirl-pools; for they are like Pits in Rivers, and are seldom unfurnished of good Fish, likewise at Wiers, Wier-pools, Mill-streams Piles, Posts and Pillars of Bridges, Flood-gates, Cataracts

Cataracts and Falls of Waters, the Conflux of Rivers, the Eddies betwixt two Streams, the returns of a Stream, and the side of a Stream, are good places generally to Angle in ; and in the Summer all Fish generally lie in the more shallow part of the River, or in a strong, Swift or gentle Stream, except Carp, Tench and Eel ; in Winter, all fly into the deep, still places. Where it ebbeth and floweth Fish sometimes bite best, in the ebb most usually, sometimes when it floweth, rarely at full Water, unless near the Arches of Bridges, Wires or Flood-Gates.

Rivers that are streight and level are not so good to Fish in, as those that are crooked, and have many corners and turnings, Pools and Pits ; for Fish get into those Creeks and Channels, and hide themselves in their private apartments. If the Water be narrow you may Fish both sides, and sooner chop upon them ; but where broad and deep their haunt is uncertain.

The best Rivers to Angle in, are not such as run in a direct, streight Line, but such as have many Polygone windings and turnings, and almost *in plano* represent the Figure of a Regular Fortification with Bastions, Flankers, Fauxbray Retrenchments, &c. which are safe places to defend the watery Inhabitants from the Assaults, and Attacks of violent Floods and Inundations : Neither are Rivers which are very broad, so convenient for this Pastime, as those

those which run in a more contracted and narrow compafs.

§ 8. When any Fish have taken the Hook from you, if it be not swallowed into their Gorge, they will live; either the Water will cause it to rust, and in time wear away, or the Fish will go to the bottom, and there roet, like a Hog, on the Gravel, till they either rub it out, or break the Hook in the middle.

How to Feed Fish.

§ 9. Into such places as you use to Angle, once a Week at least, cast in all sorts of Corn boyled soft, Ale-grains, or Wheat bran steeped in blood, blood dryed and cut into pieces, Snails, Worms, chopt into pieces, pieces of Fowl or beasts Guts, Guts of Fowl or Pullen, Beasts Livers cut into pieces, Oat-cake or Cheese chewed, ground Malt; especially for Carp Tench, Chub, Roch, Dace, Barbel and Bream, you cannot feed too often or too much: This course draweth the Fish to the place you desire, and there keeps them together: Cast in about 20 Grains of Ground Malt, or Beans, now and then, as you Angle, or chewed Oat-cake or Cheese. Your Feed for Fish must always rest in that very place, where you mean to Angle, and that your bait may come to; therefore, by no means, when you Angle in a Stream, cast them in at your Hook, but something

hing above where you Angle, left the Stream carry them beyond the Hook, and so instead of drawing them to you, you draw them beyond you. You may, between your hands, close the Malt, or Ale-grains, so fast, in handfuls, that the water will hardly part it with the fall. All sorts of Baits are good to cast in, especially whilst you are Angling with that Bait, principally Cod-baits, Gentles, Wasps and Paste ; and you'll find they will snap up yours more eagerly, and with less suspicion.

§ 10. If you Angle at any place you have twice or thrice baited, and find no Sport, if none has been there before you, or no grand Impediment in the Season or Water appear, be assured, Pike or Pearch (if they breed in that River) have there taken up their Quarters, and affright all other Fish thence, for fear of being made a Prey : Your only Remedy is presently to Angle for them, with suitable Tackle and Baits ; and when they are caught, the others will repossess themselves of their former Station.

To know what Bait and Fly Fish take.

§ 11. The first Fish you catch, rip up his Belly, and you may then see his Stomach , it's known by its largeness and place, lying from the Guills to the small Guts ; take it out very tenderly (if you bruise it, your labour is lost) and with a sharp Penknife, cut it open, without bruising, and

and then you'll find his Food within it, and thereby discover what Bait at that very instant the Fish take best, whether Flies or Ground Baits, and so fit them accordingly; and if you have a good Microscope, or magnifying Glafs, you may (with some Pleasure and Delight to you) easily discover the very true colour, proportion and shape of the Fly; and some can do it pretty well without a Glafs.

§ 12. Keep the Sun (and Moon, if Night) before you, if your Eyes will endure it, at least, be sure to have those Planets on your side; for if they be on your Back, both your self and Rod, will, with its shadow offend much, and the Fish see farther and clearer, when they look towards those Lights, than the contrary; as you may experiment thus: In a dark Night, if a Man come between you and any Light, you see him clearly, but not at all, if the Light come betwixt you and him.

§ 13. All Fish whatever, that swim in clear Rivers, are wholsomer, pleasanter, and far better tasted than those of the same kind, that live in Pits, Ponds, Mears, and standing Waters.

§ 14. A Hog back and a little head, either to Trout, Salmon, or any other Fish, are a Sign they are in Season. All sorts of Fish that have Scales on their backs, constantly swim together, in Troops and Companies, as the Roch, Dace, Chub, Gudgeon, &c. The Females of most Fish are larger than the Males.

§ 15. Let

§ 15. Let all Baits and Flies whatsoever, fall gently first into the water, before any other part of the Line, and with as little of the Line as possible, and without any disturbance, plunging, or circling of the water, which mightily scares and affrightens Fish.

§ 16. Some Fish are said to be Leather-mouthed, that is, their Mouths are so tough, that if they be once hooked, they seldom break the hold; such are the Chub, Barbel, Carp, Fench, Roch and Gudgeon; but the Pike, Salmon, Pearch, Eel, Grayling, Trout and Bream, are very tender mouthed, and their hold often breaks after hooked.

§ 17. Roch and Dace, or Dare, recover strength, and grow in season within a Fortnight after spawning; Barbel and Chub within a Month; Trout, in four Months, and the Salmon in like time, if he get into the Sea, and after into fresh water.

§ 18. Angle always, if you can, on the Lee-shore; and note, that Fish lie or swim nearer the bottom, and in deeper water in Winter, than in Summer; and also near the bottom in any cold Day, and then gets near the calm side of the water, and in the Winter are caught best at the mid-time of the Day, and in Sun-shiny Weather.

§ 19. When you put any living Bait on the Hook, torment or bruise the same as little as possible, that they may live long on the Hook, after baited.

§ 20. Let him that would be a compleat Angler, spend some time in Angling in all sorts of Waters, Ponds, Rivers, swift and slow, stony, pebly, gravelly, sandy, muddy, chalky, and slimy; and observe the differences in the Nature of the Soils and Ground on which they run or stand; and likewise the Nature and Humour of each particular Fish, Water and Bait, by which he'll become a perfect and judicious Artist, and be able to take Fish wherever he Angleth, and will find much difference between swift, slow, and standing Waters.

Likewise let the Angler observe when he takes store of Fish, the Age of the Moon, the Temperature of the preceding Night, and the darkness, brightness or windiness of it; season and nature of the Morning and Day, together with the Temperature of the Air, Water and Wind, and all other precedent, concomitant, natural or adventitious Advantages, that could any ways conduce to his Sport, and likewise on the contrary all things he finds to be Obstacles and Obstructors of his pastime, and enter them methodically in a Book, with the day of the Month, &c. Hereby, with a little practice, he'll be able to raise Conclusions for the improvement of this Art.

§ 21. In all sort of Angling, be sure to keep out of Fishes sight, and as far off the Rivers bank as possible, unless you Angle in a muddy water, and then you may approach near the water.

§ 22. Se-

§ 22. Several Countries alter the time, and almost the manner of Fishes breeding, but doubtless of their being in season, as in the River *Wye*, in *Monmouthshire*, Salmon are in season from *September* to *April*; but in the *Thames*, *Trent*, and most other Rivers, they are in season almost all the six hot Months.

§ 23. Gather or get all sorts of Materials, to make Angle-rods on, as the Hazle, Black-thorn and Yew Switches, &c. at the Winter Solstice, or, at least, between the last day of *November*, and the 20 day of *December*; because all sort of Wood then is most tough and freest from Sap; it not ascending with that vigour into the Ball and Branches, by reason of the coldness of the Weather, and the Suns small stay on our Horizon, which renders its influence feeble.

§ 24. Trouts, Salmons, Pikes, Pearches and Eels have large Mouths, and their Teeth therein, but most other Fish have their Teeth in their Throat.

§ 25. When you Angle for Pearch, Chub, Tench, Carp, Dace, Bream, Gudgeon and Ruff, and have hooked one who after makes his escape, you'll not often have any great Sport at that standing for one or two hours space next after such misfortune, because he's so affrighted, that he chases his fellows out of that place; therefore after some trial, you must remove your self, and Angle at some other Standing.

§ 26. Whosoever desires to know all the abstruse Notions and Properties of Fish, let them diligently peruse and read the following Authors, viz. *Gesner, Rondeletius, Oribatius, lib. 7. cap. 22.* Monsieur *Muffetus, Janus Dubravius, Aldrovandus, Franciscus Bonvetus, Paulus Jovius, cap. 34.* *Pliny's Natural History, Bellonius, Hyppolitus Salvianus, Aristotle, &c.*

§ 27. All Fish are of a cold and moist Temperature, but some exceed others in goodness, according to the Nature of the Water, and places wherein they live. Fish live either in the salt Water or Sea, or in fresh Waters, as Rivers, Brooks, Lakes, Mears, Pools, Ponds or Pits. The Sea fish is accounted best, is more savoury, and nourishes better, by being of a firmer substance, hotter and drier, and not so viscous, clammy and slimy, as the fresh Water Fish. Of Sea Fish, those that have Scales and firm Substances are best, and such as are inclosed in Shells, as oysters, lobsters, crabs, &c. afford a good and solid nourishment; but those of a softer, slimier or cartilaginous Substance, are not so good. Fish that live in pure Water tossed to and fro with Waves, are better than those that live in calm and muddy Waters, that are little agitated, and those that live near sandy, rocky Shores, are better than where there is much Slime and Mud; so such fresh Water Fish which live most commonly in clear, rocky, stony, pebly, gravelly or sandy Rivers, and which are of a swift course, far exceed

ceed in goodness, and yield a purer and better nourishment, than those that live in slimy, muddy or standing Waters, or very softly gliding Rivers, whose course is so slow as is scarce discernable. Fish are generally the fatest, though not the sweetest, that are fed in muddy, weedy Rivers.

§ 28. Trouts, Salmon Smelts, Pearches, Ruffs and Gudgeons, are allowed in some Distempers by Physicians, for their sick Patients to eat.

§ 29. When you Angle for any sort of Fish, be sure the same Fish is in season, else your Labour is ill lost; for Fish out of season are the worst sort of Meats.

§ 30. A great Fish bites more calmly and moderately than a small one; for they snatch and run away with the Bait, without any care or deliberation: So an old Fish that hath been prickt in the Guills or Guts, is very cautious in making a second Adventure.

§ 31. There are many Circumstances that conduce much to the feeding of Pike, Pearch, Chub, Carp, Roch, Dace and Bream; as conveniency of harbour; for they that lie among Weeds and foggy places, prove the fatest, though not always the sweetest: They are there secure from the Assaults and Disturbance of Enemies, and enjoy a more safe and contented Repose: Rest and Quietness being as natural and helpful to their feeding as to other Creatures. Again, some Waters may be more

feeding and nourishing than others: A thicker sort of Water, if it be not foul and muddy, is of a better consistency, and the parts better disposed and qualified for Nutrition, than those of a more thin and rarified Substance: No Element that is pure and without mixture, is consentaneous for nourishing: Neither can Fish live by pure Water, Respiration, or sucking, in those slender Particles of his beloved Element only, without the concurrence and assistance of some grosser and terrene Qualities, which are intermingled with those liquid Bodies.

§ 32. In the Pool *Limperis*, in *Carnarvanshire*, there is a kind of Fish, peculiar to that Water, and seen no where else, call'd by the Inhabitants there, *Tor-coch*, of the Belly that is somewhat red. So in *Winander-mere* in *Lancashire*, there is a Fish call'd, a *Charr*, peculiar to that *Mere* only; 'tis about length and bigness of a large Trout, and something resembles a Trout in its shape.

§ 33. In the East part of *Merionethshire*, the River *Dee*, springeth out of two Fountains, and forthwith passeth through *Pimble* or *Plenlin-mere*, call'd in the Map, *Lyn-tegit*, a Lake spreading far in length and breadth, and so runneth out of it with as great a stream as it entreth in, and you shall never see in the *Dee* Fishes, call'd a *Guinmad*, which are peculiar to the *Mere*, nor yet Salmons in the *Mere*, which nevertheless are commonly taken in the River.

§ 34. About *Fornby*, in *Lancashire*, when the People

People get Turffs, there is a certain black Water under the Turffs, where swim little Fishes that are caught by the Diggers; and in other parts of Lancashire, under the Turffs, are often caught Eels; so that Fishes here are digged out of the Earth, as well as about Heraclea and Tios, in Pontus, and in Paphlagonia many and good Fishes are gotten by digging in places nothing watery.

§ 35. Near unto the Abbey of St. Maurice, in Burgundy, there is a Fish pond, in which are Fishes put according to the number of Monks of that place; and if any one of them happen to be sick, there is a Fish seen also to float and swim above the Water half dead; and if the Monk shall die, the said Fish a few days before dieth. *Leonardus Varius* reports this on the Testimony of Cardinal Granvell. So at Brereton in Cheshire, before any Heir of the House of Brereton dieth, there are seen in a Pool adjoyning, call'd Bagmere, Bodies of Trees swimming for certain days together, and after to sink until the next like occasion.

§ 36. Our British Sea breeds and affords variety, and almost innumerable Fishes, as Salmons (which Bede calls *Iscios*, as Pliny, *Esox*) Plaice, Flounders, Flooks and Shads, which pickled like Anchovis, equal the best Anchovis, Pungers, Cods, Haddock, Hollyburt, Whitings, Herrings, Pilchards, Soles, Mackarel, Mulletts, Turbutts, Seals, or Sea-veals, or Sea-calves, Rochets, Maids, Ray-fish, Scate, Thorn-

back, Oysters, Lobsters, Crab-fish, Musles, Cockles, Perls, Sprats, Spurlings, which, pickled like Anchovis, or Turners-way, exceed them in goodness, and very much strengthen the Stomach, Congers, Lampreys, Yards, Periwinkles, &c. with an infinite number of others, whereof it maintaineth and feedeth innumerable Sculls and Beds, but these being beyond our Province, the fresh Water, are not to be discoursed of here; only let me tell you what Mr. *Cambden* faith, That near unto *Hunt-cliff*, in the North-riding of *Yorkshire*, not far from the shore, there appear at Low-water, certain Rocks, about which the Fishes, we call Seals, *quasi* Sea-veals, meet together in Troops, to sleep and fun themselves, and upon that Rock, which is next unto the shore, there lieth one, as it were, to keep Sentinel, and as any Man approacheth near, he either by throwing down a big Stone, or by tumbling himself into the Water with a great noise, giveth a Signal unto the rest to look to themselves, and get into the Water. Most afraid they be of Men, against whom, when they chace them, they being destitute of Water, fling backward with their hinder Feet, a Cloud, as it were, of Sand and Gravel Stones, yea, and oftentimes drive them away: For Women they care not so much; therefore those that take them use to be clad in Womens Apparel.

§ 37. In *Bone Well*, a Spring not far from *Richard's Castle*, in *Herefordshire*, are continually

ally found little Fishes Bones, but no Fish to be seen; and being wholly cleansed thereof, will notwithstanding have the like again; whether they be naturally produced, or in Veins thither brought, is unknown.

C H A P. VIII.

Seasons generally improper for Angling.

§ 1. IN great Droughts, when the Rivers are small, or in the heat of the Day, in *May*, *June*, *July*, *August*, and beginning of *September*, although there be no Drought (except cooled by Wind or shadowed by Clouds) you'll find small Sport, especially in marly, chalky, slimy, or very shallow and clear Waters and Rivers.

§ 2. In cold, frosty, or snowy Weather, or where store of Snow-broth is in the River, it's to little purpose to Angle; when there happeneth in the Summer, or Spring especially, any small hoary Frost, all that day after the Fish will not rise kindly and freely, except in the Evening, and that prove very pleasant.

§ 3. If

§ 3. If the Wind either be Easterly, or so high that you cannot guide your Tools, it's to little purpose to Angle; for there is a secret malignity in the East-wind, that generally abates Fishes appetite and desire of Baits.

§ 4. Sharp, bitter, nipping Winds blowing from the North, but the East especially, blast the Recreation.

§ 5. After any sort of Fish have spawned, they'll not bite to any purpose, until they have recover'd their strength and former appetite.

§ 6. When any Clouds arise, that will certainly bring a Shower or Storm (though in the midst of Summer) they will not bite; and if they bite well before, yet at the approach thereof, they will cease biting.

§ 7. When the Nights prove dark, cloudy or windy, and that the Moon shines little, or not at all, next day there will be little or no Sport, except at small ones; for Trout and great Fish then range about to devour others, and seek Food; so that when the Nights are dark or windy, the next day rarely proves successful to the Angler, for great Fish, especially Trout.

§ 8. In small, clear and shallow Brooks, where the Mills stand and keep up the Water, you will neither catch Fish at Ground or Fly at that time: For Fish, especially Trout, then dare not come out of their hold, by reason of the shallowness of the Water, and that the Water then brings no Food or Aliment with it.

§ 9. When

§ 9. When People wash their Sheep in Summer, at the first time only Fish bite well; because the Filth draweth them together as to a baiting place; but after they have glutted themselves four or five days, they will not bite again till washing time be over.

§ 10. Thunder and Lightening are very offensive, and spoil the Anglers Sport.

C H A P. IX.

Seasons generally proper for Angling.

§ 1. THE best Hours in general Esteem, **T**o Angle in a clear Day and Water, from about the tenth of *April*, until the end of *August*, is from Sun-rise, until half an hour after ten a Clock, and from half an hour after two a Clock, until Sun-set; so that you may rest your self in the heat and middle of the day; but if the day be dark, cloudy, gloomy or lowring, especially if at such a time also a gentle Breeze, or gale of Wind blow from any quarter but the East, or be not Easterly, you'll never fail of catching Fish in any hour of the day that is dark, cloudy, gloomy, lowring and windy, as aforesaid, but in *March*, beginning

ning of *April*, *September*, and all winter Months, you may Angle all the day, from about one hour after Sun-rise, until about half an hour before Sun-set, either in a muddy or clear Water. And you may Angle all the day from the rising until the setting of the Sun, in a muddy Water, from the middle of *April*, until the end of *August*, but early in the Morning, and late in the Evening, are best in *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*.

§ 2. If the day be dark, close, gloomy or lowring, and have a gentle whistling Wind playing on the Water, or a fine misling Dew of Rain falls gently without violence, at such a time Fish will bite: So when Trout leap out of the Water, and Pikes shoot in pursuit of other Fishes, they will bite well, if you Angle with Tackle and Baits proper for the Season and Fish.

§ 3. Calm, clear, (or which is far better) cool, gloomy, dark, cloudy Weather, in the Summer Months (that is, from mid *April*, until the end of *August*) the Wind blowing gently, so as you may guide your Tools with ease, in the hottest Months the cooler the better; at such times Fish bite well.

§ 4. When a sudden, violent Shower hath a little muddled and raised the Water, then if you go forth immediately after such a Shower, and Angle at Ground in the stream or sides thereof with Brandling, Gilt-tail, Tag-tail, or chiefly red Worm well scoured, if there be store

store of Fish, you'll have Sport to your own satisfaction.

§ 5. When Floods have carried away all the Filth that the Rain had washed from the higher Grounds into the River, and that the River keepeth his usual bounds, and is of a Whey, Chesnut Brown, or Ale colour, then it's good to Angle at Ground.

§ 6. After Floods are gone away, and Rivers come within their own natural Bounds and Banks, their first clearness recovered, and the Water pure, then it's good to Angle.

§ 7. A little before any Fish spawn, they come into the gravelly, sandy Fords, to rub and loosen their Bellies, and then and there they bite well.

§ 8. When Rivers are raised by Rain, and yet within their Banks, Fish seek shelter and ease in little and milder Currents of small Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, and at the sides or ends of Bridges, that defend a small space of Ground from the impetuosity of the Stream, or in any low place near the River side, Fish rest and secure themselves from the rapid Sream; in such a place not too deep, you'll find Sport.

§ 9. At the conflux of Rivers, and where it ebbeth and floweth, Fish sometimes bite very well, in the ebb most usually, sometimes when it floweth, rarely at full Water.

§ 10. In February, March, beginning of April, September, and all Winter Months, Fish bite best in

in the Sun-shine, warmth, and middle part of the day, no Wind stirring, the Air clear; but in the Summer Months, that is, from the tenth of *April*, unto the end of *August*, early in the Mornings and in the Evenings, until Sun-set (or after the Suns setting, from mid *May*, until the end of *July*) and dark, windy, gloomy, lowring, cool or cloudy Weather, is best to Angle in: And if you can guide your Tools, and find shelter, no matter how high the Winds be, so they be not Easterly.

§ 11. Fish rise best at the Fly after a Shower that hath not muddled the Water, yet hath beaten the Gnats and Flies into the River, you may, in such a Shower, observe them to rise much, if you can but endure the Rain.

{ The best Months for Fly, are *March*, *April* and *May*: In cooler Months, Angle in the warmth of the day; in warm Weather about nine in the Morning, and three a Clock in the Afternoon, are the very chief times to Angle in, if any gentle gale blow, and often in a warm Evening, especially if the Gnat play much: And likewise Fish rise well when the Weather is calm, cloudy, dark and gloomy, or gloomy, dark, and a little windy.

§ 12. In calm, clear, and Star-light Nights (especially if the Moon shine) great Fish, Trout especially, are as wary and fearful, as in dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy days, and stir not, but if the next day prove dark, cloudy, gloomy

gloomy and windy, and the water in order, you may be sure of Sport, if there be store of Fish in the River: For having abstained from Food all night, they are more hungry and eager, and the darkness and windiness of the day, makes them more bold to bite.

§ 13. In small, clear Brooks, if you come in, or immediately after a Shower that hath raised the Water; or take it just as any Mill Water begins to come down, and so go along with the course of the Water, Fish, especially Trout, will then bite well; for then they come forth to seek Food, which they expect the water to bring down.

§ 14. In *May* especially, and generally all Summer, if the Morning prove extream cold, as sometimes it doth (although there be no Frost) Fish bite not to any purpose, until the day become warmer; and if it prove cold all the day long, they bite best where the Sun shines, but not at all in the shady parts of the River.

§ 15. If the day be dark, cloudy and gloomy, in the Summer, no matter how high the Winds be, so they be not Easterly, and you be able to manage your Tools.

§ 16. After the River is cleared from a Flood, Fish rise very well; being glutted with Ground-baits, they then covet and desire the Fly, having wanted it a time.

§ 17. Morning and Evening are best for Ground-line, for a Trout, or other Fish, in clear

clear Weather and Water ; but in dark, gloomy, cloudy Weather, or muddy Water, you may Angle at Ground all day.

§ 18. Great Fish, as Trout, &c. feed most in the night, especially if it be dark or windy, and then bite not next day, unless dark or windy it prove, and then a little in the Afternoon only.

§ 19. The Wind blowing from the South or West, is good to Angle in, the North-wind is but indifferent, and the East-wind very bad.

§ 20. All Fish bite keener and better, especially in Summer, in swift, rapid, stony, pebly, gravelly Rivers, than in those that run gently, and glide on Slime and Mud.

§ 21. Some may expect me to insert the Elective Times most propitious to Anglers, according to the Rules of Judicial Astrologers, but they must pardon me herein, since I am sufficiently convinced of the Vanity thereof; and it would rather be an Unkindness, than Favour, by puzzling our Angler with their ridiculous Notions, as unserviceable to him, as false in their Foundations. But let our Ingenious Angler elect a cloudy, gloomy or windy Day; and the Wind not Easterly, but either Southerly or Westerly; and use proper and neat Tackle, and suitable Baits for the River, Season, and Fish he designs to catch, and then I doubt not, but he'll conclude with me, that, *Sapiens dorminabitur Astris.*

C H A P. X.

Observations on the Trout.

MY next Discourse shall be of the several sorts of fresh water Fish, wherein I shall only tell you of little more than their Haunts, (which is the place proper to Angle in for them) their particular times of biting, season, spawning and Baits, omitting much that might be said of each Fish, because this is intended to be a Summary of the Anglers Art, and more for Practice than Theory; and for that the Trout is the most excellent Fish, by the vogue of the most curious Palates, my first Discourse shall be of him.

His Haunt.

§ 1. A Trout loveth small purling Rivers and Brooks, that are very swift, crystal and clear, running on Stones, Pebbles or Gravel; he feeds whilst strong, in the swiftest Streams, and more usually in the side of the Stream than in it, sometimes in the deepest part of it, (especially if he be a large one) and near the banks, or behind a Stone, block, or some bank that shoots forth with a point into the River, upon which the Stream beareth much,

and causeth a whirling of the Water back by the Banks side, much like the Eddy of the Tide: And he the more willingly maketh choice of this place, if there be a shade over his head, as a Bush, Foam or hollow, hanging Bank, under which he can shelter himself; or behind a Stone, Log, or some small Bank, that shoots into the River, which the Stream beareth upon, where he'll lie watching for what cometh down the Stream, and suddenly catcheth it up; sometimes in the Eddies betwixt two Streams, and in the Returns of a Stream he lies. His hold is usually in the deep, under a hollow place of the Bank, root of a Tree, or Stone, which he loveth exceedingly; and sometimes, but not often he's found in Weeds. In the Spring, and latter end of Summer, he'll ply at the tail of a Stream, but in mid *May*, at the upper end; (and so do most Fish:) If his hold be near, he'll stay long in a place. As the Weather in Spring grows warmer, so he grows stronger, and departs from the deep, or dead still Waters, into the Sharp Streams and Gravel; yet the best Trout often in Summer, in Excessive Droughts, are driven out of the small and shallow Streams, and retire into the plain Deeps, where you may catch them with dibbing, or on a dark, gloomy, cloudy and windy day, that furls the Water, with the Cast-fly. There are seldom any store of Trout in Rivers that softly glide through plain, level and champaign Grounds; for they generally

rally live nearer the source, or Spring-head of Rivers.

§ 2. If there be great store of Chubs in the River, you shall only catch Trouts in the Streams, in *March, April*, beginning of *May* and *September*, because in the four hot Months Chubs come into the Streams, and then drive out most of the Trouts, by the Opinion of very good Anglers.

Spawning time, season, &c. of Trouts.

§ 3. Trouts, contrary to most Fish, spawn about *Martinmas*, in some Rivers a little earlier or later, but most other Fish spawn in the Spring or Summer; he's in season from the beginning of *March* until *Michaelmas*, but his very chief season is the end of *May*. The Female hath a less Head, deeper Body, and is usually better Meat than the Male; the best are usually red or yellow, and some white, yet good, but those rarely found; some Soils nourish them better than others, for in the same River you shall in one Field catch one lank, lean, and with a great head, and in the next Field one full, thick, lusty, red, fat, and with a small head; they die quickly after taken, but the Eel, Carp and Tench, live long out of their proper Element; they and Salmon will miraculously pass thorough and over Wiers, Flood-gates, small Cataracts and Fish Garths. They are a greedy, devouring and ravenous Fish;

and in their Season nimble, quick, and strive long and vigorously for their Lives, and will run among Roots, Weeds, or any thing to entangle the Line, or break it, and when struck will endeavour to run to the end of the Line, they like a large Bait at ground, and his ground bait must drag on the ground; Flies they take most at top of the Water, or sometimes within 2 or 3 inches of it: with Minnow or Loach he's caught within a foot of the surface of the Water, and sometimes lower by Trowling. They are of a sudden growth, yet no long-lived Fish; at full growth they decline in Body, and grow in the head until death. Some Rivers breed very large, thick and good Trout, others generally small ones, not above 9 or 10 inches in length, but very numerous. Trout in Season have their Bodies adorned with red Spots, but the Salmon with black or blackish Spots, and indeed some esteem the Salmon (and that not irrationally) to be no other Fish than a Sea Trout; because of their small difference in shape, nature, and qualities from Trout, that live continually in the fresh Streams and Waters.

On the very top of *Cadier Arthur Hill* in *Brecknockshire*, there walmeth forth a Spring of Water, and this Fountain in manner of a Well is deep, but foursquare, having no Brook or Riveret issuing from it, yet are there Trout found therein.

At *Foredidge* in *Kent*, are Trout of a five-fold Remark,

- Remark, 1. They equal Salmons in bigness.
2. In their best season they cut white, and not red or yellow, as most Trouts do. 3. They remain nine Months in the Sea, and three Months in the Fresh Water, and observe their coming into the Fresh Water almost to a Day.
4. Contrary to most Trouts, they have been observed to be but once caught with an Angle.
5. They eat nothing in the Fresh Water, but are thereby only sustain'd, as those that have dissected them do think.

In *Northumberland*, there is a Trout call'd a Bull-Trout, greater and bigger than any in the Southern parts, and there are in many Rivers relating to the Sea, Salmon Trouts, as much different from others in shape and spots, as Sheep in some Countries differ one from another in their shape and bigness; in the River *Kennet* near *Hungerford* in *Barkshire*, there is great plenty of Trouts signally large and good, also the *Stower* in *Kent*, which runs through *Canterbury*, is said to breed the best Trouts in the South East of *England*, and those in *Wandle* near *Cashalton* in *Surrey*, and *Amerly* in *Sussex*, and in *Dove*, *Wye*, *Lathkin*, and *Bradford* in *Derbyshire*, *Ribbel*, and *Irkin* in *Lancashire*, and in *Usk*, and *Wye*, in *Monmouthshire*, are accounted excellent Trouts.

Mr. *Walton* says, that *Hampshire* exceeds all *England*, for swift, shallow, clear, pleasant brooks and store of Trouts; the same opinion Mr. *Cotton* hath of *Derbyshire*, especially of the

Rivers *Dove*, and *Wye*, and the Brooks *Lathkin*, and *Bradford*, which Rivers and Brooks, he says, breed the reddest, best, and most admirable Trouts in *England*.

But to speak impartially, I think none can truly determine, in what River or Brook are the most and best Trouts; because *England* and *Wales*, hath so many Rivers and Rivulets plentifully stored therewith; that it would puzzle the Accuteſt Naturaliſt to resolve which ought to have the preheminence, and be most esteemed.

These Fish are found, and principally affeſt to lye near, and towards the sources and Spring-heads of Rivers, and the Troutſ are better or worse, bigger or lesser, according to the nature of the Soils on which the River runs; Pure, Clear, Crystalline, and Transparent Rivers and Rivulets, running on Rocks, Stones, or Pebbles, especially on Lyme Stones, are expeſimentally found to breed and afford the most delicate and best Troutſ.

When ever you make an Artificial Palmer-worm or Fly, which is to be made with a Hackle Feather, if you uſe a brown or red Hackle, then be ſure to dub with red Silk, if a dun Hackle, then dub with yellow or Limon coloured Silk; if a black Hackle, then dub with blew or sky coloured Silk; and they are excellent for Troutſ.

Baits for the Trout.

§ 4. Principal Baits for Trout at the Ground are Worms, as the Brandling Gilt-tail, Meadow-worm, Tagtail, and red Worm, but for a mighty Trout the Dew-worm well scoured; the two first are the principal Worms for him all the Year, both in clear and muddy Waters; the other for waters discoloured with Rain: Then a Cod-bait which is either for top or bottom, but always to be used in clear waters only; so is the Clap-bait, and the Water-cricket. He'll take the Palmer-fly, or Wooll-bed, and all sorts of Flies both Natural and Artificial at top of the water, especially the Palmer-fly, Water-cricket, Stone-fly, Green-drake, Ash-fly, Fern-fly, and Ant-fly. He'll likewise take a Cod-bait, and Clap-bait that are factitious, or counterfeited with yellow Wax, Shammy or Buff, as before is directed, Chap. 4. Sometimes also he takes the Oak-worm and Hawthorn-worm, at top of the water, and sometimes within the water, but always in clear water.

The Minnow, Bull-head, his Guill Fins cut off, and the Loach especially, are excellent Baits in a clear Water for great Trout in March, April and September, about Mid-water, to Trowl with in the Streams, or on dark, cloudy, gloomy, windy days in the Deeps.

A Trout will also take all sorts of Bobs,
H 4 Palmers,

Palmers, Catterpillars, young Frogs, Gentles, Dores, the young brood of Wasps, Humble-bees, and Hornets ; Beetles, their Legs and uppermost Wings cut off ; Grashoppers, their Legs and outmost Wings cut likewise off ; as the Brandling, Gilt-tail, Meadow-worm, Tag-tail, Red-worm, and Dew-worm, are the best Worms for the Ground Angle, to be suited respectively to the temperature and colour of the River, (although the Brandling, Gilt-tail, and Meadow-worm, are for either muddy or clear Waters and perhaps the best ; so is the Cod-bait, Clap-bait, Water-cricket, Palmer-worm, Stone-fly, Green-drake, Oak-fly, Fern-fly, Ant-fly, and Artificial Fly, the best for the Trout at the top of the Water when clear. Dibble with the Water-cricket, Stone-fly, Green-drake, Grashopper, and Sharn-bud, as they severally come in season ; dib also with the Oak-fly, and a Cod-bait, at point of the Hook, and let them sink half a foot, or a foot within Water, and it's a dead bait for a Trout ; Also a Clap-bait, with Artificial Head and Wings, as Cod-bait is used, is excellent for top, in like manner use the Oak-worm, and Hawthorn-worm, or Green-grub. Of each of these particular baits, see more in the Chapter of Baits.

The ways to Angle for Troutts.

§ 5. The way to Angle for Troutts at Ground, is with the running Line without any float theron, and with 1 or 2 small pellets of Lead for Plumbs, &c. Or he's caught by float Angling at Ground, at Mid-water by trowling, at top of the Water by dibbing, and the Cast-Fly, of all which ways you'll see more particular descriptions hereafter: Only let me not forget to inform you, that when you Angle in a clear Water, either for Troutts, Graylings, or Salmon Smelts, if you can attain so much Skill and dexterity as to Angle with a single Hair for 2 links next Hook, as is in the 2 Chap Sec. 15. and 12 directed, you will certainly catch 3 Troutts for one, for any that Angles with 3 Hairs next the Hook, and although you'll now and then lose a great Trout by his breaking your Line, yet if you had not been so smalltackled, ten to one he had never bit, and the numerousnes of Fishes bites compensates the losf; and obserue that you may Fish with les hazard at bottom than top with fine Tackle, because a Trout at Fly shoots or springs with a rapid agility at your bait, and from you when he hath taken it, with his head generally downwards, but at the Ground or Mid-water, he takes the bait gently, and therewith glides far more leisurely; likewise a Trout takes les notice of a thick Line at top than bottom, by reasoun

reason of his eagerness. The excellent proportion, shape, length, true plying, gentleness, freedom from top-heaviness, and well mounting of the Hasle-Rod for clear Waters, for Trout, Grailings, and Salmon Smelts, contributes much to your success in this way, together with your own freedom from rash and eager humors: And if your Hair be strong, you may easily overcome and master a Trout 13 inches long with a single Hair next Hook, especially if you have water-room, and be unmolested with Wood or Trees.

Chief Biting time for Trout.

§ 6. A Trout bites best in a muddy rising Water, or in a Water that is clearing after a Flood, or in dark gloomy, cloudy, or windy weather, early in the Morning (from mid April, until the end of August) from Sun rising until about half an hour after Ten a Clock, and from about 2 a Clock in the Afternoon until Sun set, and oftentimes in the Evening; but 9 a Clock in the Forenoon, and 3 in the Afternoon, are his chiefest and most constant hours of biting at Ground, or Fly, as the water suits either: In March, beginning of April, September, and part of October, (for you ought not to Angle for Trout after the 15 of October until the end of February) he'll bite from about one hour after Sun rising all day until almost Sun set, and best then in warm, Sun-shiny weather,

ther, and middle part of the day. *March, April, May* and part of *June*, are his chiefest Months; though he bites well in *July, August* and *September*. After a shower in the evening he rises well at Gnats: And in a warm evening, or in the evening of a hot day in Summer, you may have Sport with dibbing. When he takes the Minnow and Loach, *vide antea*.

§ 7. In little Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, where it Ebbs and Flows only in fresh waters, or a little brackish; if you begin at the Mouth of such brooks, just as the Tide cometh in, and go up the brook with the head of the Tide, and return with the Ebbing of the water, you'll take good Trout, and have much Sport; and if the Tide do not muddy the Water, they will also rise at the Fly at such a time.

§ 8. *Vid. Chapter 9.* throughout.

§ 9. In small clear brooks, if you come in, or immediately after a shower that hath raised the Water, or take it just as any Mill-water beginneth to come down, and so go along with the course of the Water, Trout will then bite well, because they expect the Water will then bring down Food with it, and they come forth to seek it: But in small brooks or Rivers, when the Mills stand and keep up the Water, you'll have little or no Sport, at Ground especially; and but little with Fly; for the Trout at such time is fearful, and dare scarce venture out of his hold.

§ 10. When

§ 10. When you Angle for Salmon or Trout, and all day long have had little, or rather no Sport, either at Ground or Fly, next night, especially at the beginning of it, and until mid-night, or near it, they will not fail to bite, either at Ground or Fly (as the Season, or Water suits best for either) freely and eagerly, if the weather be not nipping cold or frosty.

§ 11. When you Angle for Trouts with Fly or Ground baits, you need not make above three or four trials in one place; for he will then either take it, or make an offer, or not stir not at all.

§ 12. When Rains raise the Rivers, and almost continually keep them equal with their banks, or above their ordinary height, Trouts leave Rivers and larger Brooks, and fly into such small brooks, as scarce run at all in Summers that are dry, in such brooks then Angle for them. Trouts generally quit the great Rivers and brooks at *Michaelmas*, and go into small Rills, or Rivulets to spawn, and are frequently there destroyed by idle, loose and disorderly Fellows, with groping or otherwise, which does more injury to the breed of Fish, than all the Summers Angling. Thus I have known a River very plentifully stored with Trouts, in three or four years utterly spoiled.

§ 13. When you Angle for Trout or Salmon, with Worm or at Ground, let your bait drag

drag on the Ground as little as may be; but touch the Ground it must, especially for Trout's: But Mr. Cotten advises, when you Angle with a Float, to let the Bait be as near the bottom as you can, but not drag, which perhaps may do well; but the Experience of the running Line contradicts this Opinion, for therewith the bait always drags; and there is no better way at Ground yet known, for the catching of Trout's, than the running Line: Yet, I confess, if you Angle either with Cod-bait, Clap-bait, or Water-cricket at Float, that the bait swimming very near the bottom as may be, but not touching it, may do best.

When you Angle for Trout's, and only catch Minnows, be assur'd there are no Trout's there; therefore remove to another place. A young Trout is a good bait for the Pike.

C H A P. XI.

Observations on the Salmon.

Nature, season and spawning time of Salmon.

§ 1. THE Salmon is call'd the King of Fresh-water Fish: Breeds in Rivers relating to the Sea, yet so high as admits of no

no Tincture of Salt, or Brackishness. It is preferred (by some) before all Fishes, whether Marine, Fluviate, or Lakish; it is wonderful Sweet, and of extraordinary Nourishment, and therefore (unless eaten moderately) causeth Surfeits, if it be pickled like Sturgeon, strengthens the Stomach much, and provokes to an Appetite. The *Salmunculi*, Shuins, or Salmon Smelts (which are about bigness of a fresh Herring) are yet lighter and better food, and eaten as the other, or Trouts; they are in Season almost all the six hot Months in most Rivers, only the *Wye* in *Monmouth-shire*, hath both Trouts and Salmon in Season, from *September* to *April*; and so have some other particular Rivers, but they are rare. They Spawn in the end of *August*, or in *September*; having delighted himself all Summer in the Fresh waters, (into which he comes at Spring) in *October* he returns to Sea, where he lives till Spring, and grows exceeding large; but in the Fresh waters only he grows Fat, and that in the Summer. If about *Michaelmas* he chance to be stop'd by Flood-gates, or Wiers, from going to Sea, and enforced to take up his winter Quarters in the Fresh waters, he grows Sick, Lean, Unseasonable, Kipper, insipid and Tastless, and in one year pines away and dies. Their Age is about ten Years, and their Growth is very sudden, after they get into the Sea, as quickly as a Gosling becomes a Goose. They are about five Months

out

ut of Season, after Spawning. It is said, that our English Salmon is the best in Europe, and the *Thames* best in *England*: But in the *North*, behind *Lancaster*, there is as good Salmon as ay in *England*, if judicious Palates are not mistaken. Salmons when in Season, have their bodies adorn'd with black or blackish Spots, and Trouts with Red.

Most Rivers in *England* and *Wales*, where they disembogue themselves into the Sea, and so upwards the River, for several Miles, are abundantly stored with Salmons; but of principal Note, are the *Thames*, *Severn* and *Trent*, and *Lon* at *Lancaster*, and about *Cockersand Abbey*, at *Wirkinton* in *Cumberland*, *Bywell* in *Northumberland*, *Durham*, *Newcastle upon Tine*, *Dee* in *Cheshire*, and the Rivers *Usk* and *Wye* in *Monmouth-shire*, wherein are both Salmons and Trouts in Season all the whole Year. At *Kilgarran* upon the *Tivy* in *Pembroke-shire*, where is a Cataoup, or very high Cataract, call'd the Salmon Leap; and the fall is so downright and high, that People stand and wonder at the flight and strength, by which they see Salmons leap, and get out of the Sea into the River; for Salmons coming out of the Ocean to Spawn, and desirous to pass farther into the River, when they meet with this Obstacle, as Mr. *Drayton* describes in his *Poly-Albion*.

Here

Here when the labouring Fish does at the
foot arrive,
And finds that by his Strength he does but
vainly strive;
His Tail takes in his mouth, and bending
like a Bow,
That's too full compass drawn, aloft him-
self doth throw.
Then springing at his height, as doth a
little Wand,
That bended end to end, and started from
Man's Hand,
Far off it self doth cast, so do's the Salmon
Vault;
And if at first he fail, his second Summer-
Salt,
He instantly essays, and from his nimble
Ring,
Still yerking, never leaves, until himself he
fling
Above the opposing Stream.—

According to which, *Ausonius* Elegantly writes.

*Nec te paniceo rutilantem viscere Salma,
Transierim, latæ cujus vaga verbera caudæ
Gurgite de medio summas referuntur in undas.*

In the River *Ban* in *Ireland*, there is like-
wise a *Catadupa*, or as is vulgarly call'd a
Salmon Leap. This Rivers head is in the
Mountains of *Mourn* in the County of *Down*,
and

and passes through *Lough Eaugh*, or *Lough Sidney*, a large Lake in the County of *Colran*: This River (says Mr. *Cambden*) breeds Salmons in abundance, above any other River in all *Europe*; because, as some think it exceeds all other for clearness; in which sort of Water, Salmons take a special delight. It's almost incredible, (says Mr. *Cambden*, speaking of the Rivers *Done* and *Dee* at *Aberdeen* in *Scotland*;) what abundance of Salmons, as well these Rivers as others in *Scotland*, on both sides of the Realm do breed. This Fish was altogether unknown unto *Pliny*, unless it were the *Esox* of the *Rhine*, but in this North part of *Europe* very well known.

In Autumn, they Engender in smaller Rivers, and shallow places for the most part, where and when they cast their Spawn, and cover it over with Sand; and then they are poor and lean, so that they seem almost to be nothing but Skin and Bones. Of that Spawn in the following Spring, there comes a fry of tender little Fishes, which making towards the Sea, in a small time grow to their full bigness, and returning back again to seek for the same River, where they were bred, (which they always endeavour to come back into) they strive and struggle against the Stream, and whatsoever lieth in their way, to hinder their passage, with a jerk of their Tail, and a certain leap, (whence perhaps call'd Salmons à *Saliendo*) as aforesaid, to the wonder of the
I
be-

beholders. They nimbly whip over, and stay in these Rivers of theirs until they breed; during which time it's a Law in *Scotland*, they should not be caught; viz. from the Assumption of our Lady (which is the 15th of August,) to St. Andrew's Day (November the 30.) and they are reputed amongst the greatest Commodities of *Scotland*; Because it's there enacted, none shall be sold to Englishmen, but for English Gold and nothing else. So Trouts caught in the Lake *Lemanus* at *Geneva*, are a great part of the Merchandise of that City.

The Inhabitants on both sides of *Solway Firth* in *Scotland*, at Low-water, on Horseback with Spears Hunt Salmons which are there very plentiful.

The Salmon's Haunt.

§ 2. Salmons love large swift Rivers, where it Ebbeth and Floweth; yet, sometimes they are found in lesser Rivers, high up the Country, chiefly in the latter end of the Year, when they come thither to Spawn: He likewise delights in the swift and violent Streams, and the clearest pebly, gravelly Rivers, usually with Rocks or Weeds. He stays not long in a place, (as the Trout will) but is ambitious still to go nearer the Spring head, nor does he lie (as the Trout and many other Fish do) near the Water-side, or Bank, or Roots of Trees, but swims in the deep and broad

broad parts of the Water, and usually in the middle, and near the Ground, where he's to be fished for. But the Salmon Smelts commonly lie in the rough and upper part of a gentle Stream, and in the middle thereof.

Salmon's principal biting time.

§ 3. Salmons best biting time is nine a Clock in the Forenoon, and three a Clock in the Afternoon, in a clear Water, and when some Wind bloweth against the Stream; and the only Months are from mid *April*, to the end of *August*. When struck he usually falleth to plunge and leap, but does not ordinarily endeavour to run to the end of the Line, as the Trout will. Young Salmons are very tender Mouthed, as well as Grailings; and are frequently lost by their breaking hold, after Hooked: Therefore, some Persons fasten two Hooks together, in like manner, as some double Pike Hooks, lately used in Trowling are made, not with the points opposite to one another, but almost a quarter of a circle from each other; and on them they make their Fly, that if one Hook break hold, the other Hook may not fail.

Baits for the Salmon.

§ 4. For a great Salmon, the principal Ground bait is the Dew-worm, well scoured;

and for the Small Salmon Smelt, about bigness of a Herring, the Brandling, Gilt-tail and Meadow-worm well scoured, are the best Ground-baits; they will likewise take exceeding well in the Bop of both sorts, the Cod-bait, Water-louse and Counterfeit Cod-bait (with yellow Bees-wax) in clear Water.

For Flies, he takes the same that the Trout generally doth, whether Natural or Artificial; but the Natural Baits are generally taken better than the Artificial Fly, especially by the small ones.

If you put a Cod-bait or Gentle, either Natural or Artificial, but Natural better, at point of your Dub-fly Hook, they will take the Dub fly better, especially the Salmon Smelt. Flies made for the great Salmon are better, being made with four wings, than with two only; and with six better than with them of four. And if behind each pair of wings, you place a different colour for the Body of the Fly, it is much better, which argues that he loves to have several Flies on the Hook at once, for the Fly looketh as if it were divers Flies together.

The wings must be made standing one behind the other, whether four or six; also he delights to have both body and wings of the most gaudy colour, with long wings and tails. Silver-twist and Gold-twist, are good to use in dabbing the bodies. He's caught at Ground, with running Line or Float, the Bait touching,

or

or as near the Ground as possible; and, sometimes he bites well lower than mid Water, at Ground-baits. He's caught with Dub-fly, Cod-bait, Clap-bait, Water-cricket, Oak-worm and Counterfeit Cod-bait at top of the Water; and the factitious Cod-bait will be taken by them, well within the Water. The great Salmon will take Minnows and Loaches sometimes, and then you may Angle for the great Salmon, with a ring of Wire on the top of the Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a length, when he's Hooked, as is needful; and to that end, some use a Wheel about the middle of the Rod, or near their Hand, which may be far better understood by seeing one, than describing it, *vid. Chap. 10. Sect. 10. 13.*

C H A P. XII.

Observations on the Umber or Grayling, &c.

Nature, haunt and season of the Grayling, &c.,

U mber and Grayling differ only in Name, only some call the largest Umber, and the smaller Graylings. They delight in Marl,

Clay, clear Waters, swift Streams, and far from the Sea ; the *Hodder, Dove, Trent* and *Derwen*, in the Counties of *York, Derby* and *Stafford*, are best stored with them of any Rivers in *England*. The biggest is not above 18 inches long. They are in season all the Year, but their principal season is *December*, at which time he's black about the Head, Guills, and down his Back, and has his Belly of a dark grey dapled with black spots ; they are very jolly after mid *April*, and are said to be of a Trout kind. His Flesh even in his worst season, is firm, white, will easily calver, and is excellent Meat at all times, but when at best, little inferiour to the best Trout ; and in *Switzerland* they are prefer'd before Trouts, but not so in *England*. He's a very nimble Fish, swift swimmier, but dead-hearted after Hooked, has his Teeth in his Throat, is eager, and biteth freely, and will often bite at the same Fly, if not prickt ; he's tender mouth'd, and often lost by breaking hold ; therefore when you use a Fly, *vid. cap. 11. § 3.*

§ 2. When you Angle for him within water, his Bait by no means must drag on the Ground, he being a Fish that usually swims nearer the middle of the Water, and lies always loose, and more apt to rise, than descend, even to a Ground-bait ; therefore let your Bait be about 6 or 9 inches from the bottom, and to that end use a Float of Cork, rather than the Running line, if you Angle particularly for this

Fish ;

Fish; but if for Trout and Grayling, then a Running-Line.

Graylings Baits.

§ 3. He generally takes the same Baits that the Trout does: But his principal Ground-baits are the Brandling, Gilt-tail, Tag-tail, and the Meadow-worm well scour'd, Cod bait, Bark-worm and Flag-worm; and at top he's taken either with Natural or Artificial Palmers, and Flies (especially the Camlet-fly, and a Fly made of Purple-wool, and another made of light tawny Hair-camlet) as the Trout's are; he'll likewise take the Earth-bob and Clap-bait, &c.

C H A P. XIII.

Observations on the Pearch.

Nature, Haunt, &c. of Pearch.

§ 1. **H**E loves a gentle Stream of a reasonable depth, seldom shallow, close by a Hollow Bank; and although Salmon,

Trout and Pearch delight in clear and swift Rivers, pebly, gravelly bottoms, or green Weeds, yet Pearches are sometimes found, but not in such plenty and goodness, in slow, slimy and muddy Rivers, as about Oxford, and he frequents creeks and hollownesses about the Banks.

He's a very good, wholesome, and well-tasted Fish (especially the River-Pearch) a bold biter, ravenous, and great devourer of other Fish, of slow growth, and not usually above 14 inches long, and oftner about 10 or under. He has a Hog-back, arm'd with sharp and stiff Bristles, his Skin cover'd over with thick, dry, hard scales, and hath (which few other Fish have) two Fins on his Back, but the Sea Pearch (which is better) hath but one Fin on his Back, The Pearch is deep bodied.

Pearches biting time.

§ 2. He'll not bite at all times or seasons, being very abstemious in Winter, only in the middle of the day (as other Fishes then do) he'll then bite; in Summer he'll bite all the day long, in cool, gloomy, cloudy or windy Weather, yet principally from seven a Clock in the Forenoon, until after ten a Clock, and from about two in the Afternoon, till about six, and sometimes later, even till Sun-set, especially in hot weather, and middle of Summer.

mer. He's strong, and will contend hard and long for his Life; they accompany one another in Troops, (as all Fish that have Scales do) and if there be thirty or forty in a hole, they may at one standing be catcht, one after another; be sure you give him time to bite, for he's often mist for want of that.

Pearches Spawning time.

§ 3. He spawns but once a Year, and that about *February* or *March*, and carries his Teeth in his Month, which is large.

Baits for Pearch.

§ 4. His principal Baits are Brandling, Dew-worm, Red-worm and Meadow-worm, all to be well scoured, and the Minnow, Loach and small Frog; he also takes Bobs of both sorts, Oak-worms, Gentles, Cod-bait, the young brood of Wasps, Hornets and Humble-bees, Colewort-worm, Woolbed; and sometimes any Bait but the Fly, which he never meddles with: He's best caught with a Float, your Bait being about 6 inches from the Ground; sometimes they are caught about mid Water, or lower, and some will suffer the Bait to touch the ground, especially the Worm, and judge it best. They are used as baits for the Pike, the Fins being all cut off, but it's the worst bait of any, because the Pike hath a very great Antipathy against them.

CHAP.

C H A P. XIV.

Observations on the Pope, or Ruff.

§ 1. Pope or Ruff is like the Pearch, both in nature, disposition and shape, but lesser, being no bigger than a large Gudgeon, is a pleasanter tasted, and better Fish than the Pearch; a greedy biter, and commonly abundance of them lie together in one reserved place, where the water runs deep and quietly. And one may catch forty or fifty at a standing, and in sandy places they delight and grow exceeding fat and sweet. He takes the same Bait that the Pearch does, and bites at the same time; principally he'll take the small red Worm, Meadow-worm and Gilt-tail; use a Float, and Angle for him as the Pearch, and bait the Water with Earth, or Sand, as for the Gudgeon.

For excellent Pearch and Ruff, the River Yare, that runs by *Norwich*, is famous; and Dr. *Cajus*, in his Book call'd, *Rariorum Animalium Historia*, gives the Ruff a new Latin Name, and that not improperly; for it's all the Body over rough, and hath sharp and prickly Fins, it delighteth in sandy places, for shape like unto a Pearch, in colour brown, and dusky above, but palish yellow beneath, marked by the Chaws with a double course of half Circles,

the

the Eye for the upper half of it of a dark brown, and the lower part of it somewhat yellowish, like delayed Gold, the ball and sight thereof black; and this special Mark it hath, that there is a Line goeth along the Back, and fastened to the Body (as it were) with an overthwart Thread, all to bespotted over the Tail and Fins with black spots, which Fins (as doth the Pearch's) stand and bristle stiff and strong when the Fish is angry, but when appeased, they fall flat again; the Flesh resembling that of a Pearch, is much commended for wholsomness, and eating tender and short.

C H A P. XV.

Observations on the Gudgeon.

§ 1. O F Gudgeons the whitest are best; they are good and pleasant Food, wholsom, excellently tasted, of easie digestion, nourishing much, and increasing good Blood, of a fine shape, Silver-colour'd, and beautified with black spots, both on his Body and Tail. He delights in sandy, gravelly bottoms, gentle Streams and small Rivers, rather than Brooks; in the heat of the Summer they are usually scatter'd up and down in great Companies in the

the shallows of every River, but in Autumn when the Weeds begin to grow sour or rot, and the Weather colder, then they gather together, and retreat into the deeper parts of the River, and are then to be Angled for there: Use a Float, and let your Bait always touch, or drag on the Ground. Some will Angle for them without any Float of Cork, but at hand, with a Running-line, as you do for Trout in a clear Water, but it's not so good, except there be many in a pretty rough Stream; in Summer, but the Cork-line I however esteem best. Be not too hasty with them when they bite, because they'll sometimes nibble a little before they take it, tho' they commonly take the Bait pretty surely.

§ 2. They are a very wholsom and pleasant Fish, and breed two or three times a Year, the first time about *May-day*, but always in the Summer. When you Angle for them in shallows, stir or rake the Sand or Gravel with a Pole, and they'll gather to that place, and bite better; but for the Ruff or Pope, you must cast Earth or Sand into the water, where your Bait is, to make them more greedily take your Bait; do so likewise for the Gudgeon.

Biting

Biting time, and Baits for Gudgeons.

§ 3. He bites all the day, from the end of March, till Michaelmas, in or near a gentle Stream, and frequently on a gravelly, or rather sandy Ground, but will not bite when very cold, nor for a little time after his spawining, which is in May, nor immediately after a Shower or Land-flood, but will bite well in gloomy, warm weather, or in hot, Sunshiny Weather. But they'll seldom bite either before Sun-rise, or after Sun-set; but commonly begin to bite about an hour after sun-rise, and cease an hour before sun-set; because they are afraid of being devour'd by great Fish, who then are ranging for Food. His principal Baits are the Gilt-tail, Brandling and Meadow-worm well scowred, and the small red Worm, and he'll take Cod-bait, Gentles, or Wasps sometimes, but never the Fly. *Vid. cap. 6: Sect. 4.* He's a very excellent Bait for the Pike.

C H A P. XVI.

Observations on the Carp.

§ 1. **C**arp seek muddy, sandy bottoms, and deep still Waters, and the deepest, stillest place of Pond or River, and green Weeds, which he loves exceedingly. If you cut Weeds in a River, the better to make a place clear, to Angle in for Carps, they will not (tho' they before haunted the place very much) come thither again for two or three Months ; nor will they come near a Boat that you go in on a large Pond or River to Angle in for them, although Rushes or Weeds interpose ; they are so wary, fearful and subtil ; therefore stiled the fresh Water Fox, and by others the Queen of Rivers. The Spawn of Carps is very good, for the *Italians* thereof make a red Caviare, and sell the same to the Jews, who are prohibited (as appears by *Leviticus, cap. 11.*) to eat any Fish that want Scales : therefore the Spawn of the Sturgeon, of which our common Caviare is made, is an abomination to them.

Sussex is said to be the best furnished with Carps of any County, whither they were first brought out of *Spain* by one Mr. *Mascal*, about

15. of Henry 8. Anno Dom. 1524. as the subsequent Rhyme intimates : Viz.

Hops, Reformation, Turkeys, Carps and
Beer
Came all into England in one Year.

I am credibly inform'd, that in the Seas
about the Isle of Man, there are caught very
excellent Tench and Carps.

Spawning time of Carps, &c.

§ 2. They breed better in Ponds, than Rivers, but not at all in cold Ponds, but in those that are warm and free from blustering Winds, and in Marl-pits, or Pits that have clean Clay-bottoms, or in new Ponds, or Ponds that lie dry a Winter season, but they breed not so well in old Ponds full of Mud and Weeds; where the like the Water and Soil, they'll breed three or four times a Year, and their first spawning time is about *May-day*; and as their increase is wonderful for their multitude, which is so great as to overstock the Ponds, and thereby both starve themselves and other Fish therein, so their decay is mysterious, all being often gone, and none knows how. They live ten, twenty, thirty or forty Years, and some say more, and are (contrary to the Pike) better for Age and bigness, the largest is rarely above 18 or 20 inches long; they are a fat, sweet

sweet and soft Fish, the Male better than the Female, and the white better than the yellow, and are best in *March*, and will live long out of Water. They begin to spawn at three Years old, and continue to do so till thirty. You'll seldom catch Carps in a River with Angling, but in Ponds you may take store; they'll feed on Grass in the Pond, or sides thereof.

Carp's chief biting time.

{ § 3. They bite very early and late in *April*, *May*, *June* and *July* and *August*, and in the Summer all night in the still part of the water; have a long Rod, and keep still, and out of sight, when you Angle for them. When you strike him, if you give him not play, he'll break all; for he's strong, will struggle long and stoutly; he's caught at mid Water, sometimes lower, and sometimes higher, as the Weather is, and use always a Float of Quill; when a large Carp takes the Bait, he runs to the farther side of the River or Pond. Bait the place you Angle in, for them, with ground Malt.

Baits for the Carp.

{ § 4. Best Baits for the Carp, are Gentles, Wasps, Bobs, sweet Pastes, Dew-worm, Red-worm, Marsh-worm, Gilt-tail, Flag-worm, Cod-bait, Bread-grain boiled soft. Mr. *Walton* advises to dip a piece of Scarlet, breadth of a Die,

Die, in Oyl of Petre or the Rock, and put it above the Hook, having a Bait of Gentles below. In the heat of the day, in June and July, when Carps shew themselves on the top of the water, especially amongst Weeds, take a well-scor'd Lob-worm, and cast the same to them, as you would Angle with a Natural Fly, and they will bite, if you carefully keep out of sight, feed for them.

C H A P. XVII.

Observations on the Tench.

Haunts of Tench.

§ 1. **H**IS haunts and times of biting are generally the same with the Carp, yet I have known them in April, on a cloudy, misty, rainy Morning, the Wind South or West, and warm, bite very well until eleven a Clock. He loves to feed in foul Water, and amongst Weeds, and he likes Ponds, better than Rivers, and Pits better than either: In some Pits they will breed only, and never thrive to any bigness, and in others they'll thrive and never

K

breed;

breed; and, like the Eel, he loves muddy Ponds; and notwithstanding the ill Character some have given of him, yet he's a good and pleasant Fish, if eat in his season, and well drest. He hath large Fins, very small and smooth Scales, a red Circle about his Eyes, big, and of a gold colour, and from either Angle of his Mouth, there hangs a little Barb.

The River *Stowr*, in *Dorsetshire*, is particularly commended for plenty of Tench and Eels; so is *Brecknock-mere*, in *Brecknockshire* being two Miles in length, and as much in breadth, full of Pearches, Tenches and Eels. The Tench when rightly pickled, is said very much to resemble Sturgeon in the eating.

Spawning time of Tench, &c.

§ 2. They spawn about the beginning of *July*, live long out of Water, and by some esteem'd the Physitian to other Fish, having a Medicinal Balm on his Skin; their best season is from the beginning of *September*, until the end of *May*.

Biting time of Tench.

§ 3. Carp and Tench bite from Sun-rise, until eight a Clock, and from four a Clock in the Afternoon, until after Sun-set, but in the hot Months from Sun-set all night.

Baits for Tench.

§ 4. Angle for them with a Float of Quill, the Bait being about 2 foot within Water, sometimes more, sometimes less: His best Bait is Gentles, Cod-bait, Flag-worm, Marsh-worm and red Worm well scoured; and as you use your Worms, put them by themselves in Tar, a little before used only, and try whether it increases your sport, which many affirm it does; but I could never find any advantage by it: He'll likewise take Wasps, and Pastes, especially if sweet ones.

C H A P. XVIII.

Observations on the Bream.

Nature and Haunts of Bream, &c.

§ 1. **B**ream is a large and stately Fish at full growth, is dangerous to eat by reason of Bones, and is a kind of flat Carp, yet is whiter, and of better nourishment; breeds both in Rivers and Ponds, but in the latter

K 2 better;

better ; if he likes the Water and Air, he'll be very fat, is long in growing, yet a great breeder, even so great as to overstock the Pond, and thereby consume all the sweet Feed, and starve all other Fish. Some say Breams and Roches mix their Spawn together, and so there becomes a spurious breed of Breams. They swim in Companies, and he likes gentle Streams, sandy, clay bottoms, and deepest and broadest part of a River or Pond. He's caught from Sun-rising, till eight a Clock, in a gentle Stream, muddy slimy Water, and a good gale of Wiud, and in Ponds, the higher the Wind, and where the Waves are highest, and nearer the middle of the Pond, the better. Three a Clock, and four in the Afternoon, and so till Sun-set, are likewise good times to take them, but if the day be dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy, Breams will bite all the day. He spawns in *June*, or beginning of *July*, is easily taken ; for after one or two gentle turns, he falls on one side, and so is drawn to Land with ease. You may Angle for them from the beginning of *April*, until *Michaelmas*, and if in Rivers, in or near a gentle Stream.

Baits for the Bream.

§ 2. Principal Baits for the Bream, are red Worm, Gilt-tail, and Meadow-worm well scoured, Pastes, Bobs, Flag-worm, Wasps, Gentles, a Grashopper, his Legs cut off, and Flies, under Water, especially green Flies. When he bites, he'll draw the Bait towards the farther side of the River. Angle with a Float, and let the Bait touch the Ground. And if you bait the place where you intend to fish, with ground Malt, it will draw them to that place, and you'll have far more sport. In the same manner you ought to bait the place for Carps.

C H A P. XIX.

Observations on the Barbel.

Barbels Nature and Haunts.

§ 1. THE Barbel is of a fine cast, and hand-some shape, is large, with small scales, placed after a most exact and curious
K 3 manner;

manner; so call'd from his Barb or Wattels, at his Mouth under his Nose: In Summer he lives in the strongest swifts of the water, and under the shades of Trees; they much delight in the shallowest and sharpest streams, and lurk under weeds, feeding on small Gravel or sand, against a rising Ground, where he'll root and dig in the sand with his Nose like a Hog, and there nests himself; yet sometimes he lies about deep and swift waters, at Bridges, Flood-gates or Wiers, where he'll remain among Piles or hollow places, and take such hold of Moss or Weeds that the swiftness of the water is not able to force him thence; at the approach of Winter, he forsakes the swift streams and shallow waters, and by degrees, retires to those parts of the River that are quiet and deep.

Spawning time of Barbel, &c.

§ 2. He's none of the best Fish either for wholsomness or taste, yet not so despicable as some would make him, though he and the Chub are esteem'd to be the worst sort of Fishes, yet good Cookery makes them of better reputation with those that eat of them, than they are in vulgar Opinion. The Barbel spawns about *April*, and the Spawn is very unwholesome, (some say) almost Poyson, yet they are often taken by Country People; for they both vomit and purge violently. *Aldrovandus saith,*

faith, That the Barbels Flesh tastis well, is tender, of easy Concoction, and of good Juice, but full of Bones, which perhaps is the reason he's contemn'd. They grow in season about a month after spawning.

Barbels biting time.

§ 3. He bites early in the morning, from Sun-rise, until ten of the Clock, and late in the Evening, from four a Clock, till Sun-set, and sometimes later. Their principal biting Months, are from about the twentieth of *May*, until the end of *August*. He's a cunning, wary, subtil and strong Fish, will struggle long, and unless dexterously managed, breaks both Rod and Line. They flock together like Sheep, and are at worst in *April*.

Baits for Barbel.

§ 4. His Baits must be sweet, clean, well scoured, and not kept in musty, sour Mofs, and his Bait must touch the Ground, and to be Angled for with a Float. His prime Bait is Gentles, not too much scoured, new Chese, Pastes, Red-worm and Dew-worm well scoured; and try the young brood of Wasps, Hornets and Humble-bees, and the Bob of both sorts. He'll often nibble or suck the Bait off the Hook, yet avoid the Hook's coming into his Mouth.

C H A P. XX.

*Observations on the Roch, and of
the Dace, or Dare, in some places call'd a Showler.*

Nature, Haunts, &c. of Dace and Roch.

§ 1. **T**H E Roch, and the Dace, Dare, or Showler, are much of a kind in matter of feeding, cunning, goodness, and usually size. They like Gravel and Sand, and the deepest part of the River; under the shades of Trees, are Fish of no great esteem, very simple; become in season about 3 weeks after spawning. The Dace or Dare spawn about middle of *March*, and the Roch about the middle of *May*, who is call'd the fresh Water Sheep for his simplicity; however is a very healthful Fish, whence the Proverb, *As found as a Roch.* Their being so full of Bones makes them less regarded. The best Roch are in the *Thames* about *London*. The Flesh of the Dace is soft, sweet in taste, and of good nourishment; and pickled like Anchovis, after the *Italian* manner, with Allomot Salt, are stomachical; some pickle them like HERRINGS.

The

The *Italians* take them in Winter, but they are best in *February* and *March*, before they have spawned. They are esteemed excellent food, by some, if rosted or broyl'd, and seasoned with Salt, Vinegar, Oyl, Cinnamon and Pepper. The *Roch* is caught in Ponds, within 2 foot or less of the top ; but the *Dace* should have his Bait within 2 inches of the bottom, and sometimes to touch the bottom ; both *Roch* and *Dace* bite all the day long, from the rising until the setting of the Sun. Angle for them with a Float.

§ 2. Best Baits for them are Earth-bob, Gentles, Cod-bait, Clap-bait, Oak-worm, Pastes, Wasps, Sheep's-blood, Lip-berries, Periwinkles, small White-snails, Hawthorn-worm, Colewort-worm, Cabbage-worm, and any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and Flies, especially the Ant-fly ; but the *Roch* takes Flies best within the Water, but the *Dace* at top of the Water, or within an inch of it : In Rivers they'll take likewise Brandlings, Gilt-tails, and Meadow-worm well scoured. In Ponds Angle for the *Roch* under Water-dock Leaves ; they'll also take Bread-grain boiled soft : They are prodigious breeders for Number : They are very excellent Baits for Pike. *Roches* spawn is excellent to eat.

Under Bridges & won they lie in shoals
the Deeds by

CHAP.

Best Bait for *Roch* in hot Summer weather
H. H. Buttercill with shot

C H A P. XXI.

*Observations on the Chub, or Chevin.**Nature and spawning time of the Chub:*

§ 1. THE Chub is no good Fish, timorous although large, must be eaten the same day he's caught ; his Head is the best part of him ; his spawn is good, and he spawns in *March*, and becomes in season a month after spawning, and is in season from mid *May*, until after *Candlemas*, but his best season is Winter. They usually swim many together in summer.

Chub's Haunt.

§ 2. He likes sandy and clay bottoms, large Rivers, and streams shaded with Trees ; in Summer you'll find many together in a Hole, sometimes floating on the top of the water, they may be then caught by Dibbing ; and in hot weather he's caught near the mid water or top ; in colder weather nearer the bottom, or at bottom by a Ledger bait, that is, when the

the Bait rests on the Ground in a certain place.

Chub's chief biting time.

§ 3. They bite from Sun-rise until 8 a Clock, and from 3 a Clock in the Afternoon till Sunset. After struck he quickly yields, if a large one, but the lesser struggle briskly and longer. In winter Months they bite in the middle of the day, and in Sun-shine.

Baits for the Chub.

§ 3. He'll take almost any sort of Bait, but his best Baits are seven Eyes, and Eel-brood, each about thickness of a straw; also the Dew-worm and Red-worm well scoured; the Earth-bob, and Brains of an Ox or Cow, Cheese, Paste, and the Pith or Marrow of an Ox or Cow's Back bone, fat Bacon, these are good Baits for the cooler Months. In the Summer Months, he takes all sorts of Baits bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, especially the Oak-worm, Crabtree-worm, Palmers, Wool-beds, Catterpillars, Cod-baits, Gentles, the young brood of Wasps, Hornets and Humble-bees, Beetles, ther Legs cut off, Dores, Grasshoppers, Clap-baits, White snails, and Black snails, their Belly slit that the white appear; these Snails he takes very early in the morning but not in the heat of day. He'll likewise take

Mig-

Minnows, Loaches and Bull-heads, and small Frogs, either by night or day ; likewise he'll take Lip-berries, Colewort-worm, Cabbage-worm, Hawthorn-worm, Fern-fly, great Moth, the great brown Fly which lives on an Oak like a Scara-bee, and the Black-bee which is bred in Clay Walls, and the House-cricket, and peel'd Malt, or Wheat Grain boyld soft ; also Rasp-berries, Black-berries and Mulberries. He loves a large Bait, as a Wasp, and a Colewort-worm, and then a Wasp all on the Hook at a time ; and he would have diverse sorts of Flies on at once, and a Fly and a Cod-bait, or Oak-worm together.

How to Angle for the Chub.

§ 5. He's caught by a Float at mid Water, or lower, at top by Dibbing, and at bottom by a Ledger-bait. When Cattel in Summer come into the Fords, their Dung draweth Fish into the lower end thereof. At such time Angle for Chub, with Tackle and Bait suitable, and you'll have sport. Take off the Beetles Legs and uppermost Wings when you use them ; do the like by the Grashopper.

C H A P. XXII.

Observations on the Eel.

Eels their Nature and Kinds, &c.

§ 1. **E**els are said to be bred several ways, either by Generation, as other Fish, or of Mud, putrefaction of the Earth, or some Dew that falls on the Water-side in *May* or *June*, and is condensed and enlivened by the Suns calid influence ; others say, when Eels grow old, they breed others out of the corruption of their own Age. There are 4 sorts of Eels, the Silver Eel, and the Greenish or Yellowish Green Eels breed by Generation, and not by Spawning, her brood coming alive from her, no bigger, nor longer than a small Pin, are the best : The blackish Eel, which hath a broader, flatter and larger Head than ordinary, and the Eel with Red Fins ; the blackish Eel is the worst. They live about 10 years, and after they get into the Sea they never return, neither do they at any time go, or swim up the River they breed in, but always downwards ; so that catch what numbers you please with leaps or weels at Mills, and it's no prejudice to the River. They are always

always in season and very good, but their very best season is Winter, and their worst in *May*. Eels are impatient of cold, for in the 6 cooler months they stir not up and down, neither in Rivers nor Ponds, but get into the soft Earth or Mud, and there many of them bed themselves together; they seldom stir in the day time, unless the Water be muddled and raised a little by Rain; but are most usually caught in the night.

There is likewise the Conger or great Sea-Eel, which has a white, fat and sweet Flesh, nourishing to Excess; therefore dangerous, because of surfeits. They are first par-boyl'd in Water, with store of Salt and sweet Herbs, then broyl'd, so they are exceeding good food: Or, you may first par-boil them in Water and Salt, then highly season them, and bake them in a Pot in the Oven. The small ones are taken between Gloucester and Tewksberry, and below Warrington in Lancashire; the great ones only in the salt Sea.

There is likewise a Lamprey, or Lampron, whose Flesh is sweet, good, and of much nourishment, increasing Lust; and by reason of its Lusciousness, easily causes surfeits, if much eaten, and is for that cause bad even for strong Stomachs, especially such as are Paralytick, Gouty, Agueish, or Old. This Lamprey is best in *March* and *April*, being then fattest; in Summer they are harder and leaner. The *Italians* beat them on the tail till almost

almost dead, then gag them with a whole Nutmeg, and stop every oylet-hole with a Clove, then cast them into Oyland Malmsey, with Crumbs of Bread, and a few Almonds blanch'd and minced, to correct and better their Flesh, and then broil them. They are about a yard long, live in the Sea in Rocky places, and in the mouths of Rivers, and weigh about 12 pound weight. But I suspect my self to be impertinent, in saying thus much of the Conger and Lamprey, since they afford the Angler no sport; therefore I will return to my Eel, and tell you that the Eel hath a very sweet Flesh, fat, white, pleasant, and yields much nourishment; they are best rosted and broiled; or first par-boil'd in Salt and Water, and then rosted or broiled, which makes them very tender, if par-boil'd first; or after par-boiling in Salt and Water, you may fry them in a Pan, &c. They are apt to cause surfeits; therefore eat sparingly of them, and drink a Glas of Wine after eating them.

The Rivers *Stowr* in *Dorsetshire*, and *Ankam* in *Lincolnshire*, and *Irk* in *Lancashire*, are fam'd by their respective Neighbours for very excellent Eels; and the following Rhime is frequent in the Mouths of *Lincolnshire* Rusticks; *viz.*:

*Ankam Eel, and Witham Pike,
In all England is none like.*

In *Ramsey-mere* in *Huntingtonshire*, are store of Eels and large Pikes, which they there call *Hagets*; *Cambridgeshire* fancies she has the most and best Eels, if you'll credit her Natives.

The *Severn* in *Worcestershire*, breeds and feeds such a number of fresh water Lampreys, as if Nature had there stored a Pond with them; these Fish are like to Eels, slippery and blackish, but beneath on their Bellies somewhat blew; at either side of their Throat they receive and let in fresh water at seven holes, because they want Guills; they are best in the Spring time, being then very sweet; for in the Summer the inner Nerve or String which serves them instead of a Back-bone, grows hard; and this Sting or Nerve is always to be taken away when you dress them. And, whensoever you either roast, fry or broil Eels, Congers, or Lampreys, be sure they be done brown, tender and crisp; and first well par-boyl'd in water, with store of Salt and Fennel, or sweet Herbs, which mightily corrects, and renders their Flesh more pleasant, tender and palatable.

Haunts of Eels.

§ 2. In the day time they hide themselves under some Coverts, Roots of Trees, Stocks, Stones, Brush-wood, Piles, Boards, or Planks about Flood-gates, Wiers, Bridges or Mills, or in holes in the Rivers bank; and they delight in still Waters, and in Waters that are foul
or

or muddy; tho the smaller Eels are found in all sorts of Rivers and Soils: They are a very pleasant and delicate Fish, and one may easily surfeit on them. A piece of an Eel is a very good and sweet Bait for the Pike.

Baits for Eels.

§ 3. Best Baits for Eels are Dew-worm, Red-worm, and Lamprey that's very small, and young brood of Wasps, Minnow, Loach, Bull-head, his Head cut off, very small Gudgeon, Bleak, and small Roch, a Hen or Chickens Gut, Beef or Horse Flesh; the four first are proper for him, either by day or Night; but the rest are to be used with night Hooks only.

Ways of catching Eels.

§. 4. He's caught in the day time by a Ledger-bait, by Snigling, or Brogling and Bobbing; and by night with laying of night Hooks, baited with seven Eyes or Eel-brood, each about thickness of a Straw, Minnow, Loach, or Bull-head, his Head cut off, small Roch and Dace, small Gudgeon, a Hen or Chickens Gut, Dew-worm, Beef or Horse Flesh, a Bleak, or a Red-worm, Pith or Marrow in the Back-bone of an Ox, Cow, Calf, &c.

L *Snigling,*

Snigling, or Brogling for Eels.

§ 5. Brogling, or Snigling is thus performed, get an exceeding strong and long Line, and a small compassed Hook, baited with a well scoured Red-worm, or Dew-worm; hold one end of the Line in your Hand, then place the upper end of your Hook very easily in the cleft of a long Hazle-stick, that it may easily slip out: With this Stick and Hook thus baited, search for holes under Stones, Timber, Roots, or about Flood-gates, Weirs, or Piles, and put the Bait leisurely therein; if there be a good Eel, give her time and she'll take it, but be sure she hath swallowed it, then very leisurely draw her out by degrees; for she lying double in her hole, will with the help of her Tail break all, unless you give time for her to be wearied with pulling, and so hale her out by degrees, not pulling too hard.

This way of catching Eels, is only to be practised when the Waters are low, and on a hot Summers day.

Bobbing for Eels.

§ 6. Bobbing for Eels is thus; take the largest Garden-worms well scoured, and with a Needle run a strong Thread through them, from end to end; take and use so many as at last

last you may wrap them slackly about your hand a dozen times at least, then tie them fast with the two ends of the Thread, that they may hang in so many long boughs or hanks, then fasten all to a small strong Cord, about 2 yards long, and about a handful or 8 inches above the Worms, tie the Cord on a knot (for the knot on the Cord should always be about 6 or 8 inches distant from the Worms) then get a Lead-plumb 3 quarters of a pound weight, shaped like a Pyramid, and bore a hole through the middle of this Lead from end to end, so as the Cord may easily pass to and fro, then put the upper end of this Cord through the Plumb, (the thicker end of the Plumb being downwards) and let the Plumb rest on the knot on the Cord above the Worms, then fix the upper end of the Cord (which should not be above 2 yards long) to a strong and long Pole. Thus prepared, Angle in a muddy Water, and either in the deeps or sides of Streams, and you'll feel Eels tug strongly and eagerly at them, when you think they have swallowed the Worms as far as they can, gently draw up your Worms and Eels, and when you have them near the top of the Water, hoist them amain to Land, and thus you may take 3 or 4 at once, and good ones too, if store there be.

These two ways of Snigling and Bobbing, are proper only for Eels, no other Fish being to be caught after that manner.

C H A P. XXIII.

*Observations on the Pike.**Nature of the Pike*

THE Male Pike is better than the Female, which is out of season a great part of Summer. And,

§ 1. The Flesh of the Pike is whiter, subtiller, and more excellent than that of the Carp, and is so harmless, that sick Persons may eat thereof. The Spawn or Rows provoke both Vomit and Stool, and are us'd by Rusticks for that purpose. He is a great devourer of other Fish, whereby he acquires the name of fresh Water Tyrant or Wolf. He's long liv'd, as to live 20 or 30 years, some say 200 years, but others will allow his Life to be not above 10 years; the Eel and Carp are better for age and bigness, but so is not the Pike; their chief season is from the end of *May*, until *Candlemas*, the middle size being best and fattest; his bites are venomous; he always swims by himself, and not in company; he breeds but once a year, and that in *February* or *March*; he's a bold and greedy biter, and is not afraid of a shadow, or seeing People. The best Pikes are in

in Rivers, next those in great Ponds or Mears, and the worst in small Ponds. *England* hath the best Pikes of any in *Europe*, and *Lincolnshire* the biggest, though about *Oxford* there are very excellent Pikes, and large ones too. They grow to the length of 45 Inches.

The Pikes Haunts.

§ 2. He loves a still, shady, and unfrequented place, sandy, chalky or clay bottoms, still Pools, full of Fry, and shelters (the better to surprise his Prey unawares) himself amongst Bull-rushes, Weeds, Water-docks or Bushes, and often he bites about the middle of the River or Pond, and always about mid Water, the Bait generally being in a continual and gentle motion, and never to be less than a foot from the Ground.

The Pikes chief biting times.

§ 3. In *April, May, June*, and beginning of *July*, he bites best early in the Morning, and late in the Evening, and seldom to any purpose in the night of all the year, and he bites best in a clear Water and a gentle Gale, in still places usually, or at least in a gentle Stream, and three a Clock in the Afternoon is his best hour in *July, August, September, and October*, in a clear Water and gentle Gale, in still places, or a gentle Stream.

In September and all Winter Months, he bites all the day long, especially about three a Clock in the Afternoon, the Water being clear, and the day windy, and then indeed he bites best, both in Winter and Summer, especially when the day is dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy, but in a muddy Water he bites not well, except after a Flood, and the River be almost clear, and then he bites pretty well; for after a glut of Rain, or some great Showers, a Pike never bites well, nor in a muddy Water, nor at spawning time about mid March. Those that are fat, are usually yellow and spotted, but a thin lean Fish is white and pale.

Baits for the Pike.

§ 4. He takes all sorts of Baits, except Fly, but principal Baits are large Gudgeons, Roches, small Daces, large Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, Bleaks; in July, young Frogs, Salmon Smelts no bigger than a Gudgeon, Smelts or Sparlings that are small, fresh and sweet, and well fastened on the Hook; for they are very tender. Fat Bacon is used by some for a Bait for him in the Winter Months. A young Trout, a young Jack, Pearch, his back Fins cut off, and a piece of an Eel are good Baits likewise for the Pike; and be sure that all your Fish Baits, as Roch, Dace, &c. be very fresh and sweet when you use them for him. Pearch
is

is the worst Bait of any, and to be used only for want of others.

Ways to catch the Pike.

§ 5. He's caught four manner of ways, *viz.* by a ledger Bait, by the Snap, Snare, and Trowling; of all which you'll see hereafter plentifully in this Book: But however procure some expert Angler, the first time you fish for him, to accompany you, and shew you the way. Let your Bait for Pike, be always about mid Water, and never to touch the Ground, but at least a foot from the bottom.

C H A P. XXIV.

Observations on the Flook or Flounder.

§ 1. **F**Look or Flounder is a Sea-fish, which wanders far into fresh Rivers, and there dwells and loses himself, thriving to an hands breadth, and almost twice so long; is a pleasant Fish, of good nutriment, strengthens the Stomach, and causes appetite; the best Plaice have the blackest spots on their Body, as the best Flounders the reddest; is a Fish without Scales, therefore not eaten by the

Jews. He makes the Angler great pastime, and although greedy biters, yet crafty; for they will nibble and suck at a Bait sometimes before they swallow it, and if they perceive the Hook fly from it; therefore let your Bait be always in motion, and it will make them more eager; they commonly covet gravelly, sandy bottoms, deep, gentle Streams, near the Bank, or at the end of a Stream, in a deep, still place, or in a gentle Stream that is brackish, and sometimes in the deepest, stillest place of the River, and near the Bank, but not so ordinarily as in a pretty swift, or rather gentle Stream. They bite all the day, from Sun-rise, until Sun-set, in *April, May, June, July,* and part of *August.* His best Baits are small Red-worms, and the Meadow or Marsh-worm well scoured, Gilt-tails, the young brood of Wasps and Gentles. Use a Float, and let your Bait touch the Ground.

C H A P. XXV.

Observations on the Bleak, or Bley.

¶ 1. **B**leak or Bley has a tender kind of Flesh, but is no wholesome Fish, because in Summer they go mad, by reason of

of a Worm in their Stomachs, but the Sea-bleak is a good Fish, he is always in motion, a very eager biter, and you may Angle for him with as many Hooks on your Line as you can conveniently fasten on it, they being tied along the Line, one half a foot above the other. He takes Gentles the best, and likewise the same Baits that Roch does, but they must be lesser, also the Dub-fly which should be of a very sad, brown colour, and small, and the Hook so too. He's caught at mid water, or top, and he is almost always in motion. The *Variatae*, or Sea-bleak changes his colour with every Light and Object, and is therefore call'd the Sea-Camelion, but it has firm and wholesome Flesh, and is as good as any Carp. They are very good Baits for the Pike.

C H A P. XXVI.

Observations on the Minnow or Penck, Loach, and Bull-head or Millers Thumb.

§ 1. These Fish are of little consideration, The
only sometimes they are caught to make Baits on for other Fish, else they are only Women and Childrens Sport.

The Minnow appears first in *March*, continues until *Michaelmas*, and then betakes himself to the Mud, Weeds, or Wood in Rivers, to secure himself from Floods, devouring Trout, and other Fishes of Prey.

He least frequents deep, still places or holes, where Trout or great Fish ply, neither stirs in the night, nor in dark, windy Weather, for fear of becoming a Prey to Trout or other Fish, who at such times principally bite and range about for Food. His most usual time is from an hour after Sun-rising (if the day prove fair) till an hour before Sun-set. His Baits are chiefly small Worms, Gilt-tail, Brandling, Cod-bait, &c. and is caught either at mid Water, or near, or close to the bottom. Use a Float in Angling for him.

Loach and Bull-head.

§ 2. The Loach is a pleasant Fish, light, delicate in Taste, wholesome, and of excellent nutriment, breeding and feeding in clear, swift Brooks or Rills, living in the sharpest Streams, and on the Gravel, and often under Stones, he something resembles an Eel in shape, and both Loach and Bull-head being of one nature and humor; their Female are in the Summer often full of Spawn, they are always caught on the bottom, the Bait touching the Ground, and their best Baits are the small red Worm, Gilt-tail or Meadow-worm.

§ 3. The

§ 3. The Minnow, Loach and Bull-head (his Guill-fins cut off) are very good Baits to trawl with, in the Streams, or on dark, windy days, in the deeps, about a foot within Water, for the Trout, in *March*, *April* and *September*, and for the Pike, Pearch and Chub, from *March*, till *Michaelmas*, and for the Eel, at the same time; at night Hook, Fish take the Minnow, Loach and Bull-head, in the day time, in a clear Water only.

C H A P. XXVII.

*Of the various Ways of Angling.
and first of the Running-Line.*

ALL sorts of Fish take Baits at the Ground sometimes, although all will not take the Fly at top of the Water, and the Running-Line, without any Float thereon, and one or two small pellets of Lead, for Plumbs, is the most proper and excellent way to Angle for a Trout with Worms, either in a muddy or clear Water, at Ground.

*How to Angle with the Running-Line in a
muddy Water.*

§ 1. THE Running-Line, in a muddy Water, or one discoloured by Rain, should be about half length of Rod, sometimes more, and sometimes less, and the two lowermost Links of three Hairs a piece, then one of four Hairs, at top, whereof have a Loop or Water-noose, to put it to another Link of four Hairs, having likewise a Water-noose or Loop at its bottom, and then proceed with Links of five or six Hairs a piece to the topmost: The three lowermost Links or Gildards should be of a sorrel, brown, or Chestnut colour; and have a Cane or Reed-rod, with a top neither too stiff, nor too slender, but in a mean, and the Cane or Reed to be about 3 yards and half long, and the top about 1 yard and half, or 2 yards of Hazle in one or two pieces, and 5 or 6 inches of Whalebone, made round, smooth and taper, all which will cause the Rod to be 5 yards and half long, or 5 yards at least, which it ought to be.

§ 2. The Line should have so much and no more Lead than will fit the Water you Angle in, viz. more in a great, troublesome, rough River, than in a smaller that's quieter, as near as may be, so much only as will sink the Bait to the bottom, and permit its motion without

any

any great hesitation or jogging on the bottom, and in Angling, carry the top or point of your Rod even with your hand, gently downwards (for you must begin at the head of the Stream, and let the Bait run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will permit) the Lead dragging and rowling on the Ground, no more of the Line being in the Water, than will permit the Lead to touch the bottom, (for you must keep the Line as straight as possible, yet by no means so as to raise the Lead from the bottom or Ground) and when you have bit, you'll both feel and perceive by the point of your Rod and Line, then strike gently, and straight upwards, first allowing the Fish (by a little slackening the Line) a small time to take the Bait.

But some strike at the first biting of the Trout, but that is in a clear Water, for Trouts, Graylings and Salmon Smelts, which may not only do well, but is the best: Your Bait should be a red Worm well scoured, or, which is better, a Brandling, Meadow-worm or Tag-tail, or, which I like best, both a Brandling and a Gilt-tail on the Hook at the same time, to be baited as is hereafter directed to bait two Worms to be on the Hook at once; and note, that you are often to renew your Bait, and generally, in a muddy Water, I Angle with two Worms on the Hook at once, as two Brandlings, two Meadow-worms, or a Brandling and Gilt-tail on the Hook at once; when I Angle

Angle for Trouts, unless I use the Dew-worm, a Trout takes the Bait dragging on the Ground, either in a muddy or clear Water, when you use Worms, but a Grayling 9 or 12 inches from the bottom, and had rather rise, than descend even to a Ground-bait.

As for the Leading of the Running-Line with Plumbs, you are before taught at *Chap. 3.* § 10, 11, 12.

The manner of baiting a great Dew-worm.

{ § 3. If you Angle for a great Trout, with a well scoured Dew-worm, in a muddy Water, or one discoloured by Rain, bait it thus, *viz.* put the Hook in him towards the tail, somewhat above the middle, and out again a little below towards the head, then draw him above the whipping or arming of the Hook, then put the point again into the head of the Worm, till it come near the place where the point of the Hook first came out, then draw back that part of the Worm, that was above the shank or arming of the Hook, and so fish with it; the Hook should be pretty large.

How to Bait two Worms.

§ 4. But if you Angle in a muddy Water for Trouts of the usual size, (*viz.* from 8 to 12 Inches long) then have two Brandlings, or two Meadow-worms, or a Brandling and Gilt-tai

Gilt-tail on the Hook at once, (which I esteem best) and you are to bait them thus, *viz.* Run the point of the Hook in at the very head of the Brandling, and so down through his Body, till it be past the knot, or about middle of the Worm, and then let it out, and strip the Worm above the whipping or arming (that you may not bruise it with your Fingers) till you have put on the other, by running the point of the Hook in below the knot or middle of the Worm, and upwards through his Body towards the head, till it be just covered with the head, which being thus done, slip the first Worm down over the arming or whipping again, till the knots or middles of both Worms meet together. Any two Worms may be thus baited.

How to bait a single Worm proper for a clear River or Water, and Running-Line there.

§ 5. But if you Angle with one Worm only on the Hook, (which is most proper for a Trout, Salmon Smelt, or Grayling, in a clear Water, at Running-Line) it is to be baited thus, *viz.* Put the point of the Hook in at the very tag of his tail, and run up his Body quite over all the whipping or arming, and still strip on almost an inch upon the Hair or Line, the head and remaining part hanging downwards,

wards and covering the point of the Hook, but many Anglers let the head hang downwards, and the point of the Hook to be bare, and so Angle with it; but others cover the point of the Hook with the Worms head, as aforesaid, but nip off the very tip-end of the Worms head, and so Angle with it: However, many highly commend the Angling with Running-Line, in a clear Water, for Trouts and Salmon Smelts, with the Worms head hanging downwards, and the point of the Hook bare, and strike then immediately upon the first bite or Touch of a Trout or Salmon Smelt.

*How to Angle in clear Water with
Running Line.*

§ 6. Thus you are to bait the Brandling, Gilt-tail or Meadow-worm, and only one Gilt-tail or small Brandling to be on the Hook at a time, well scoured, your Hook being small, your Line should have two or three of the lowermost Links or Gildards to be of one Hair a-piece, and then one or two Links of two Hairs a-piece, and then one of three Hairs, and so proceed with three and four to the top-most Link: The Hair should be white, or rather a dusky white or grey colour, and the Line generally about 2 yards shorter than the Rod, (*vid. before cap. 2. and § 12. 15.*) and leaded with a small blackish Pellet of Shot for Plumb,

Plumb, (*vid. cap. 3. § 10, 11, 12.*) thus Tackled and Baited, Angle always in the Streams, evermore in a clear, rather than a troubled Water, and always up the Stream and River; still casting out the Worm before you, with a light one Handed Rod, (made of Hazle, Yew, and Whale-bone, and 5 yards and half long at least) like an Artificial-fly, where sometimes it will be taken at the top, or within a very little of the superficies of the Water, and commonly before the light Plumb can sink it to the bottom, both by reason of the Stream, and that you must always keep your Hand and Worm in motion, although very slowly, by drawing still back towards you the Bait, as if you were Angling with a Fly. The Rod must be light, pliant, long, not top heavy, true and finely made; and it's the best way of Angling for Trout, Grayling, and Salmon Smelts with Worms, in a clear Water especially, by many degrees: And, if your Constitution would endure to let you wade to the Calf of the Leg, or Knee, into the tail of a shallow, clear Stream, and so keep off the Bank, you may almost take what Trout, Graylings, or Salmon Smelts (if the River be but plentifully stored) you can desire. However, some had rather use with the like small and fine Tackle, when they Angle for Graylings only, with Worms, Cod-bait, Ash-grub, or Dock-worm, a Float of Cork; because they take their Baits best 6, or 9, or

12 inches from the bottom or ground : But I do not so well approve thereof, as the running Line.

The manner of Angling in very clear Rivers, by reason of their exceeding brightness, is very much different from the method commonly used in others, which by not being near so transparent, but of a more condensed dark Body, admit of stronger Tackle, and allow a nearer approach to the Stream, and are not so difficult for Novices, as are our more rarified Northern Rivers, which require an able and judicious Artist, and very fine Tackle, with which Wonders may be effected in a clear Stream ; and this way of Angling with a Worm and a single Hair, for 2 links next Hook, in a clear water for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, is of a modern Invention, but on frequent Experiments, found so advantagious, that it's generally substituted (especially from the rising of the Sun until 8 a Clock) instead of the Artificial-fly, and by some affirmed to be the best way of killing most Fish in a clear stream, even the day through.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Float Angling.

Float Angling.

§ 1. For Float Angling, your Line is to be longer than Rod by 2, or 3 foot in a River, but shorter than the Rod in Pits, Ponds or Mears; when you Angle for Trout, Graylings, Salmon Smelts in a clear Water, then but one Hair next the Hook, &c. and such a Rod and Line as directed for a Trout with running Line in a clear Water; but for most other Fish, and in a muddy Water, three Hairs next Hook, and of the thickness as is before directed, chap. 2. § 14, and 17, and let it be leaded as is directed, chap. 3. § 10, 11, 12. But if you Angle for the Chub, Carp, Barbel, Tench or Pike, then your Lines must be stronger and your Rod too.

§ 2. The Bait must be proper for the Fish you Angle for; your Plumbs fitted to the Cork or Float, your Cork to the Condition of the River you Angle in, that is, to the swiftness or slowness of it: (vid. before chap. 3.

§ 5, 6, 7, 8, 9) and you must cast the bait up the River, and let it run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will suffer. In a clear Water, when you use Worms, bait but with one worm only. In a muddy or discoloured water, bait with 2 worms at a time, as is before directed.

If you Angle in a clear water, the colour of your Line must be white, or rather a dusky white or gray colour. But if in a muddy water, or one discoloured by Rain, then your Line for 2 yards next Hook ought to be of a sorrel, brown, or of a Chesnut colour; and the upper part of your Line of white Hair.

§ 3. This way you may Angle for most sorts of Fish, and the bait must drag on the Ground for some sorts, especially the Trout, Gudgeon, Bream, Barbel, Flounder and Salmon; but for Grayling and Pearch 6 or 9 inches from the bottom, but the Pike, Ruff, Carp, Tench, Roch and Bleak at mid water, sometimes lower and sometimes higher. The Chub is often taken with the bait on the bottom, sometimes at mid water in hot weater, sometimes at the top. The Dace takes all Ground baits at bottom: Some let the bait touch the ground or bottom, when they Angle for Pearch, Tench and Roch in Rivers, and like it best, although others disallow thereof, and would have the bait to be about 6 inches from the bottom. In Ponds for Roch and Tench, Angle always about 2 foot within water. Mr. Cotton directs

directs to Angle for a Trout with Float, and then the Bait to be as near the bottom one can, so as the Bait drag not, which is difficult, if not impossible, to be observed, by reason of the declivity of the bottom, and unevenness thereof in most places; and the daily experiment of the running Line, shews that a Trout will take the Bait at bottom well enough. The Eel is never to be Angled for with a Float, but always with a Ledger-bait, Snigling, Brogling, or Bobbing.

You may use all sorts of Baits when you Angle with a Float, but Ground Baits and Pastes are most usual, sometimes Flies for Roch within the water, as the Ant-fly, &c.

§ 4. Let your Lead neither be so heavy, as to sink the Cork or Float, nor so light, as not with the smallest touch to make the Cork dip under water; the infallible Signal of a Bite, unless the bait stop on Wood, Stones or Weeds, or the Line be entangled on Wood, Stones or Weeds.

C H A P. XXIX.

Angling at top with a Worm.

§ 1. For this way you must use a Line longer than the Rod, and a Brandling, or a Gilt-tail-worm; and your Line is to be
M 3 with-

without Float or Lead. You must draw your Bait up and down the Stream, at top of the water, as you do a Cod-bait for Trout : In a clear Water and Day, perhaps you may take more Trouts and Salmon Smelts than otherwise.

C H A P. XXX.

Of Night Angling.

§ 1. IN the Night usually the best Trouts bite, and will rise ordinarily in the still Deepes ; but not so well in the Streams. And although the best and largest Trouts bite in the Night, (being afraid to stir, or range about in the Day time;) yet I account this way of Angling both unwhomfom, unpleasant and very ungentiel, and to be used by none but Idle pouching Fellows. Therefore I shall say nothing of it, only describe how to lay Night Hooks ; which, if you live close by a River side, or have a large Moat, or Pond at your own House, will not be unpleasant, sometimes to practise. But as for Damming, Groping, Spearing, Hanging, Twitcheling, Netting, or Firing by Night, I purposely omit them, and them esteem to be used only by disorderly and rascally Fellows, for whom this

this little Treatise is not in the least intended.

How to lay Night Hooks.

§ 2. Let him that would lay Nights Hooks, procure a small Cord 16 yards long, and thereunto at equal distances tye 5 or 6 Hemp Lines, of the Thickness of the Trowling Line, about 18 inches long a-piece, (but so fasten or tye them to the Cord, as you may easily remove or put them to again;) to each of which whip a Hook, and Bait the same with a Minnow, Loach, or Bull-head, his Guill Fins cut off, or for want of them a small Gudgeon, small Roch, seven Eyes, or small Brood of Eels, or Beef, or Pith or Marrow in an Ox, or Cow's back-bone; and if you bait with any Fish, put the point of the Hook in at the Tail and out at the Mouth, the Head of the Fish resting in the Hooks bent, and cover the point of the Hook with a small worm, and then to one end of the Cord fasten or tye a Stone, or a Lead weight about 2 pounds in weight; and throw it cross the River in some still deep, or at the tail or side of a Stream that's deep; and the other end fasten to some Bough or Stick, on the Water bank you stand on; and in the Morning you'll not fail to find Fish caught. Some put their Hemp Line through a great Needle, and put the Needles point in at the Fishes Mouth they bait with,

and out at his Tail, and then let the Bait slip or fall down to the Hooks bent, the Head being downwards, and tye the Baits Tail to the Line with thread, and then tye the top of the Hemp Line to the Cord, and so proceed as before, &c.

§ 3. This way you'll take Eels, Chubs, large Trout and Pike; but if you lay for Pike, let not your Bait go to the bottom, but with a Float keep the Bait about a Foot from the bottom. For other fish let the bait touch the bottom, which Lead will cause. Your great Locomotive is as good a Bait as any for Night Hooks, only if you lay them in Rivers, perhaps the small Fish may pull your bait off, and miss being taken. Therefore it's best to use Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, small Gudgeons, Bleaks, small Roches, small Daces, Seven Eyes, &c. in Rivers at Night Hooks.

C H A P. XXXI.

Observations on mid Water, and Ground Angling.

§ 1. **W**hen you Angle with running Line, (which is always to be without any Float) keep your Line so straight, that it only permit your Lead to touch the Ground, and

and thereon roul (without any hesitation, or jogging) and no more: So in Float Angling, keep your Line as straight as possible, suffering none of it to fall or lie in the Water, but what is inevitable, because it as well scares Fish, as hinders the nimble jerk of the Rod when you strike; but if, as sometimes you cannot avoid, but some little will lie in the Water, then keep it in the Stream above the Float, by no means below it; and let your Bait always, either at Float or running Line, or any other way of Angling whatsoever, fall gently first into the Water, without any disturbance, circling, or plunging in the Water, as little as you possibly can; and let as little of the Line as you can, fall with the Bait into the Water.

§ 2. When you Angle at Ground for small Fish, as Gudgeons; or at mid Water for Roch and Bleak, put 2 or 3 Hooks on your Line, the one about 8 or 9 inches lower than the other, which you may do, by having 2 or 3 Gildards, or Links arm'd, or whipt with Hooks, and tied at the lowermost water Knot. Thus you may put on 2 or 3 different Baits, and you'll try with more ease and less time which is best taken, and often catch 2 or 3 at once. You may also have one Bait for such as feed close upon the Ground, as Gudgeon, Flounders, &c. And another for such as feed a little higher, as Roch, Dace, &c. But if your bait be to run on the Ground, (as for Gudgeon)

Gudgeon) you must have a fair Sandy bottom, free from Wood, Stones and Weeds: Your Lead is always to be on the lowermost Link.

§ 3. Give all Fish time to take and swallow the Bait, especially Pike, Pearch, Gudgeon, and, in a muddy water, Trout, being not over hasty, unless you Angle with such tender Baits as will not endure nibbling at, but must upon every touch be struck at, (as Pastes, Sheep's Blood, Flies, &c. which are taken away at the first pull of the Fish,) and therefore at first pull oblige you to try your Fortune. But the Roch generally nibbleth at the Bait, and does not bite surely; but if he does bite surely, then it's commonly a very good one: Therefore strike at the first touch when you Angle for him.

§ 4. Angle for all sorts of Fish in the places they most frequent, and where their Haunts are described to be, and at the proper seasons and times of biting, and when the Fish are in season, (all which you may be perfectly informed of, in the particular Chapter of each Fish;) and with suitable Tackle and Baits.

§ 5. When you Angle with Worm in a clear Water, sometimes putt after the Worm, and on the point of the Hook a Cod-bait, Earth-bob, Clap-bait, or Gentle, or Wasp.

§ 6. When you use Pastes, or any very tender Baits, have a small Hook, quick Eye, nimble Rod,

Rod, and that a little stiff, and a ready Hand, or all will be lost, both Bait and Fish ; which must in such case be struck at, the very first touch or pull.

§ 7. Many when they Angle for Trout, or Salmon Smelts in a clear Water, strike as soon as they have bit ; (which I commend) and the bite is easily perceiv'd by the motion of the Rods point or Line.

§ 8. When you Angle at Ground for Salmon, put 2 or 3 Garden-worms well scoured on your Hook at once, and dispose your self as when you Angle at Ground for a Trout.

§ 9. If you Angle for Pearch or Trout, and catch Minnows, be assured that neither Pearch or Trout are there, because they are great devourers of Minnows and small Fish.

§ 10. Whenever you Angle, either at mid Water or Groond, and have bit, be sure you strike gently and straight upwards, if possibly you can, which you may easily do, if you be not obstructed by having Wood, or Trees over you.

§ 11. Use not a great Hook for a small Bait, nor a small Hook for a great Bait.

§ 12. The running Line is used only for Trout, Graylings and Salmon Smelts, and some use it for Gudgeons, and the running Line without any Float thereon ; and about half length of Rod, is proper only for streams and quick running Waters, and not for slow and mild Rivers, whose current is not swift.

§ 13. When-

§ 13. Whenever you Angle with the running Line, (which is always to be without any Float on it) with Worms in a clear water, the Worm ought to be a Gilt-tail, Marsh-worm, or small Brandling well scoured, and one only to be on the Hook at a time; and your Bait is always to be cast up the River and Stream, and kept in a gentle motion, by drawing your Bait towards you, and without the Leads fastning or jogging on the bottom, although it must touch the bottom; having 1 or 2 at most, small Pellets for your Plumbs, and those not too heavy, but so as may be carried easily with the current of the Water.

§ 14. When you Angle with running Line and Worm, either in a muddy or clear Water, let your Bait be always in a gentle motion, your Lead or Plumb seldom or not at all sticking, or fastning on the bottom; and when your Line is run as far as the Rod will permit it, and to its utmost extent, then draw it out gently, and not hastily, and you'll often have a Trout take the Bait at its rising from the Ground.

§ 15. When you Angle in a very stony River that's clear, with the running Line, the Stones are apt to rub the small Pellet, or Lead Plumb bright, and that scares away Fish: Therefore, when it does so, put on other Lead that is black, and take away the former.

§ 16. *Vid. chap. 7. § 25.* Whenever you
Angle

Angle for Barbel, Carp, Tench, Bream, Pearch, Gudgeon, Ruff and Flounder, use a Float and Lead at your Line. The like do for Roch, Dace and Bleak, if you Angle for them within Water, and not at top with a Fly.

C H A P. XXXII.

Angling with a Ledger-bait.

§ 1. Some persons (especially when tired, and mindful to rest their wearied Limbs) betake themselves to Angle with a Ledger-bait, which is, when a Bait always rests in one fixed or certain place; and is so called in opposition to other Baits, that are always walking or in motion, thence called walking Baits. The manner of the Ledger-bait is thus.

§ 2. Take off your Cork from your Float Line, it being Leaded as usually; and within half a yard of the top of the Line, wrap about it a thin Plate of Lead, 1 inch broad and an inch and a half long; then put your Line to your Rod, and bait your Hook, and cast the same into a very gentle Stream, or still low draught, and there let the bait sink, and rest

rest on the bottom: You either firmly holding the Rod, or sticking the thick end thereof in the Rivers Bank, and either standing or sitting by it, you will perceive, by the motion of the Lead on the Lines top, when you have bit. This way you may Angle for all sorts of Fish whatsoever, especially the Chub and Eel. Let Ledger-baits for the Pike be always kept, at least, a foot from the bottom, by the help of a Float.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Treats of Natural Fly-Angling Dibbing.

§ 1. **A**ngling with the Natural Fly (which is call'd Dibbing, Dapeing or Dibling) is first to be spoken to; and it will serve as an Introduction to Angling with the Artificial Fly.

§ 2. Dibbing is always performed on the very surface, or top of the Water, or sometimes by permitting the Bait to sink 2 or 3 inches into the Water, but that seldom, unless you joyn a God-bait, or Clap-bait with the Oak-fly, for Trout or Chub.

§ 3. This

§ 3. This Dibbing is performed with any sort of Natural Fly, but principally with the Green-drake and Stone-fly, or with the Oak-fly and Cod-baits, or with Fern-fly, for about ten days in *May*, for a Trout, but the Fern-fly is good for the Chub all the sommer; or you may dib with Cod-baits, Clap-baits, Cankers, Palmers, Catterpillars, Grasshoppers their Legs and outmost Wings taken off, Oak-worm and Hawthorn-worm, or Grub, and sometimes with an Artificial Green-drake or Stone-fly. Some often pull off the uppermost wings of the Fern-fly, when they use it in Dibbing for a Trout.

§ 4. The Salmon Trout, Grayling, Bleak, Chub, Roch, and Dace, are the only Fish that will take Flies, the four first take the Natural Fly no better than the Dub-fly, except in very hot, calm weather, or in the Evening of a hot day, at which times it's most proper to dib; the rest take Natural Flies either at top, or under, or within the water, and sometimes a Dub-fly, especially if a Cod-bait, Oak-worm, Clap-bait or Gentle be joyned with it. The Dace takes Flies best at the top of the water, or within an inch thereof, but the Roch takes Flies best within the water a foot or more deep sometimes.

Dibbing for Trout, or Grayling.

§ 5. Dibbing for Trout or Grayling is performed with a Line about half length of Rod, if the Air be still, or with one almost as long as Rod, if there be a Wind to carry it from you (have four Hairs next Hook for Trouts, but five or six for the Chub) wherein always have the Fly play, or Fly on the very top of the water before you, up and down the River, as the wind serves; and Angle as near as you can to the bank of the same side whereon you stand, although where you see a Fish rise near you, you may guide your quick Fly over him, whether in the middle, or on the contrary side; and if you are pretty well out of sight, either by kneeling or the interposition of a Bank or Bush, you may almost be sure to raise and take him too, if it be presently done; the Fish will otherwise, peradventure, be removed to another place, if it be in the still deeps, where he is always in motion, and roving up and down for prey, though in a Stream you may always almost, especially if there be a good Stone near, find him in the same place. You may likewise dib with the Water-cricket, or Creeper, in the Streams, in the Month of April; above an inch of the Line (at most) is not to be suffered to touch the Water in Dibbing; therefore you may be stronger tackled; likewise in this kind of Angling

gling, you are to expect the biggest Fish, and wanting length to give him Line after he is struck, you must be forced to tug for't; therefore your Line may be stronger.

I heard an Angler lately, highly commend a Dibbing Line made of white Virginal Wyre, the brittleness or stiffness of it being first allay'd and temper'd, by laying the same upon clear hot Coles of Fire, for some small time, which will cause the Wyre to be more tough, and not so apt to snarl, or break.

How to bait the May-fly for Dibbing.

§ 6. The Green-drake and Stone-fly, all allow to be May-flies; therefore take one of them (for commonly two are used) and put the point of the Hook into the thickest part of his Body, under one of his Wings, run it directly through, and out at the other side, leaving him spitted cross on the Hook, then taking the other, put him on after the same manner, but with his head the contrary way, in which posture they will live on the Hook, and play with their Wings a quarter of an hour, and let them but just touch the superficies or top of the Water; but if you dib with an Oak-fly and a Cod-bait, put the Oak-fly on length ways in under his Head, and out at his tail, and a Cod-bait on point of the Hook, and let them sink a little into the Water, and they are a killing Bait, especially in some Ri-

vers. And observe, that you may bait any other two Flies after the same manner; and let me inform you of this Secret, that if Fish will not very well take your Natural Stone-fly at Dibbing, then if you pull away his Wings, and Angle with him within the Water, about mid Water, or near the bottom, in a clear Water, as you sometimes Angle with a Cod-bait, that Trout, Salmon Smelts, &c. will very eagerly take it.

Dibbing for Chubs.

§ 7. In hot Weather, and in a clear Water, you'll find Chubs often floating near, or on the top of the Water, then get secretly behind some Tree or Bush, standing as free from motion as possible, let your Hook hang a foot short of the Water, to the end you may rest your Rod on some Bush or Bough of a Tree, and the Chub, in all probability will sink down towards the bottom of the Water, at first sight or shadow of the Rod; and would so do, if a Bird fly over him, yet presently rises to the top again, soaring there, till frightened by some shadow; look out the best, moving your Rod as gently as a Snail to that you intend to catch, let your Bait fall gently on the Water 5 or 6 inches before him, and he'll seldom refuse the Bait. You may Angle thus with Catterpillars, Oak-worm, Ash-fly and Cod-bait, or any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, Clap-bait,

bait, Crabtree-worm, Hawthorn-worm, young brood of Wasps, Hornets and Humble-bees, Fern-flies, Grass-hopper, Beetles, Great Moth that flys abroad in Gardens in a Summers Evening, and hath a great head like an Owl, with whitish Wings, and a yellowish Body, House-cricket, Black-bee, &c. Take off the Legs and uppermost Wings of the Black-bee, Beetle, Grafs-hopper or Cricket, sometimes when you use them; do the like to the Fern-fly sometimes; and have two or three sorts of Baits on the Hook at once, as a Fern-fly, Clap-bait and Wasp; and if you be on the fide of a Stream when you Angle, let the Bait sink a foot or 2, and he'll often take it within Water.

Rules for Dibbing.

§ 1. You must always Dib in a clear Water, and on the surface or top thereof, and you are neither to have Lead or Float on the Line; a hot, calm day, or in the Evening of a hot day, is the most proper time, and in still deeps, rather than Streams, but sometimes in Streams or sides thereof, when the Water is clearing, after a Flood especially. You may dib with the Green-drake both in Streams and stills, all hours of the day; but the Stone-fly is most proper for the Streams only, and that early and late, and not in the mid time of the day: But if there be a whistling Wind in the Evening, Dib in the still deeps with an Artificial

Stone-fly, where and when it will murder, and the best Fish then and there rise; no matter how late, so you can see the Fly. Sometimes you may pull off the Wings of the Stone-fly, and Angle within Water with it, and it will be sometimes taken better than the Stone-fly with Wings on, especially in Streams near bottom.

§ 2. When you bait any sort of Fly, let your Fingers be dry, and not wet or moist, lest you spoil the Fly, especially if tender.

§ 3. Keep out of sight, if possible; for to fish fine and far off, is the great Rule in all manner of Fly-Angling; for if a Fish be coming towards a Fly, and perceive one, he'll turn short; therefore keep your Fly gently moving on the top of the Water, as if it were alive, your self out of sight.

§ 4. When you Dib for Chub, Roch, Dace, move not the Fly swiftly, when you see the Fish coming towards it, but rather after one or two short and slow Removes, suffer the Fly to glide gently with the Current, towards the Fish, or if in a standing or very slow Water, draw the Fly slowly, not directly upon him, but sloping and sideways by him, which will make him more eager, lest it escape him; for if you move it nimbly and quick, they will not (being Fish of slow motion) follow as the Trout will.

§ 5. When Chub, Roch and Dace shew themselves on the top of the Water, on a Sunshine

shine day, they are easily caught with Baits proper for them; and you may almost choose from amongst them which you please to take. Roch takes Flies best within the Water, but Dace on the top. Chub, Roch and Dace will sometimes take an Artificial Fly; but they take it better, if you put a Cod-bait, Earth-bob, Clap-bait or Gentle at point of the Hook, or an Oak-worm, Hawthorn-worm, Cole-wort-worm, or a Cabbage-worm. The Oak-worm, Hawthorn-worm, &c. is full as good on the top of the Water, as under, or than the Fly it self, and more desired by them.

§ 7. Trout, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts will take an Artificial-fly very well at Dibbing; particularly best the Green-drake, and likewise the Stone-fly, early or late in the Evening; and if you could but hit the colour of the Oak-fly aright, and join a Cod-bait, either Natural or Artificial, there would be no great need of the Natural Oak-fly. If you dib for Salmon Smelts, Chub, Roch, or Dace with the Dub-fly, put on a Cod-bait, Clap-bait, Wasp, or Gentle at point of the Hook.

§ 8. In a calm, you will not have so much Sport even with Dibbing, as in a whistling gale of Wind, both because you then are not so easily discovered by the Fish, and also then but few Flies can lie on the Water; for where they have so much choice, they will not be so eager and forward to rise at a Bait,

that both the shadow of your Rod, Body, nay very Line, in a hot, calm Day, will, in spite of your best caution, render suspected to them; but even then in the swift Streams with the Green-drake, or Stone-fly, or other Natural-fly proper for the River, Season and Fish you dib for: By sitting patiently behind a Bush you may do execution.

§ 9. All Fish take the Fly, sometimes best at top of the Water, at another time much better a little under the superficies of the Water. Therefore, if they will not rise at the top, try them a little under; but Chub and Roch will frequently take the Fly within Water, and the Dace at the top of the Water, or within an inch or 2 of it.

§ 10. Fish never eagerly rise at any Fly, until that kind come to the Rivers side, which all Flies do before they die, to moisten their Bodies and Wings, and from the Bushes and Herbs skip and play upon the Water, where they are snapt up by the Fish.

§ 11. To know what Flies Fish take, beat on the Bushes on the Rivers Bank, and see what Fly falls, and Fish take best, and that use, *vid. cap. 7. § 11. cap. 4. § 35.*

§ 12. You may Dibble with the Oak-fly, Oak-worm, Fern-fly, (for Trout only about 10 Days in some part of *May*, and sometimes take off the Fern-flies uppermost Wings; but use the Fern-fly for Chub all the Summer;) Green-drake, Stone-fly, Grasshopper, Sharn-bud

bud and Grashopper, Oak-fly; and thereunto put on point of the Hook a Cod-bait, or Clap-bait, or any other Fly proper for the River, Season and Fish. Your Line being about 2 yards long, standing behind a Tree or Bush, or over any deep hole where the Trout, or Fishes hold is; and make the Bait stir, or move up and down on the top of the Water, as if it were alive; still keeping your self out of sight. And if there be Trout, in a hot Day, or especially in the Evening of a hot Day, you may have Sport.

§ 13. You may Angle with the Oak-worm, Hawthorn-worm, Cod-bait, or Clap bait at top of the Water, sometimes as a Dub-fly, if you set on the shank of the Hook when you whip it, about a Straws breadth from its Head, a Hogs Bristle as is directed for Cod-bait, *chap. 4.* § 13, and at the Head of the Hook a pair of Artificial Wings.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Treats of Artificial Fly-Angling.

NOW I shall treat of Artificial, Dab fly, or Cast-fly Angling, (for so it's styled in several places:) And herein I find no small

N 4 . . . difficulty

difficulty by written directions, perfectly (although I shall attempt it) to teach any (though as ingenious as may be) how to make an Artificial, or Dub-fly. Therefore the best and readiest way is, to procure some skilful Fly-Angler to let you see one made; and by observing the following Rules, and then your own Experience and Observations, in a short time will make you a perfect Artist. The great difficulty is, to obtain the right colour of the Fly, Fish, at the instant of your Angling, then take, which none can make a general description of, because several Rivers and Soils produce several and divers Flies; as the Boggy have one sort particular to them, the Clay, Gravelly and Mountainous Country and Rivers others; and the Mellow light Soil different from them all, but much earlier in some places and Rivers than others: Nay, in *Wales*, and in some other Countries, there are peculiar Flies proper to the particular place and Country. And my own Experience has abundantly satisfied me, that almost in every River the Flies vary in Colour, Kind, Shape, or Proportion; and that in all places the same sort of Flies are taken, much earlier in some Rivers and Years than others; nay, in the very same River and Year, I have known the Stone-fly taken a Month, or more earlier at 5 or 6 Miles distance lower, than higher up the same River. For those very Flies that use to appear about, and on the Water in one Month

of the Year, may the succeeding Year come almost a Month sooner, or later, as the same Year proves colder or hotter; for Sun-shiny Weather and warm Springs brings them earlier, but in colder Weather they are later.

Sometimes Fish change their Fly (but not usually) once or twice in one Day, but ordinarily they seek not for another sort of Fly, till they have for some Days even glutted themselves with a former kind, which is commonly when those Flies are near Death, and ready to go out. For Fish contemn the Flies until they be at the best; and have the greatest appetite for them when most plentiful; and when that sort grow old and decay, and another kind, or sort cometh in abundantly, then they change.

Therefore the Angler having observed and found the Fly Fish most affect, at the very present time, let him make one as like it as possibly he can in Colour, Shape and Proportion of Body and Wings; and for his better imitation, let him lay the Natural Fly before him, and try how near Art can come unto, or dissemble Nature, by an equal Symmetry and Commixture of Colours. The better to attain, which end, the Angler must always have in readiness a large Magazine Bag, or Budget, plentifully furnished with the following materials. *viz.*

Bears Hair.

§ 1. Bears Hair of diverse Colours and Shades, are the most excellent Dubbing; as Gray, Dun, light Coloured, sad Coloured, and bright shining Bears Hair, and bright brown Bears Hair.

Camels Hair.

§ 2. Camels Hair sad, light, and of a middle, or indifferent Colour.

Badgers Hair.

§ 3. Badgers Skin Hair, that is, the brownish soft Fur, which is on some part of the Badgers Skin, is very good Dubbing, after the Skin is tewed in the Skinners Lime-pits, and so is the blackish.

Spaniels Hair.

§ 4. Spaniels soft Fur and Hair of diverse Colours, and parts of the Spaniel, as on the Ear, &c. as brown, sad brown, light brown, blackish, and perfect black.

Dogs Hair.

§ 5. Get the like Colours from a Water Dog, and from a long-coated Cur, and a smooth-coated Cur.

Hogs Down.

§ 6. Be sure to procure from Butchers, or others, Black, Red, Whitish and Sanded Hogs Down, such as is combed from the Roots of the Hair, or Bristles of Hogs of those Colours, or of spots on them of those Colours. And you may get the Dyer to dye the White Hogs Down of any Colour you judge convenient, and it's excellent; because it both shines well, and is stiff, and proper for the Water, and lively.

Sheeps Wooll.

§ 7. Sheeps Wooll of all colours both Natural and Artificial, get the coarsest Sheeps Wooll, and the Dyer (especially the Silk-Dyer) will make it you of any colour you judge convenient, and such as will best abide in the Water; for all your colours should have that property.

Mohairs.

§ 8. Mohairs of all colours, especially the following, *viz.* Black, Blew, Purple, White, Violet coloured, Isabella, and Philomot, coloured Mohairs, Yellow, Tawny, &c.

Cows Hair.

§ 9. Get soft Hair and Furs from the Flanks and other soft parts of a Black Cow, Red Cow, and Breded Cow, and of these have brown, sad brown, light brown, and perfect Black Hair and Furs.

Camlets.

§ 10. Get pieces of Camlets both Hair and Worsted of all colours, especially the following, *viz.* Blew, Yellow, Dun, Brown, dark Brown, light Brown, Red, Violet, Purple, Black, dark Brown, shining Camlet, dark Violet, Horse-Flesh, Pink and Orange colour'd.

Abortive Colts, and Calves Hair

§ 11. Resort to a Skinners Lime-pit, and there get Hair of various Colours, and you may get most excellent Dubbing of Castling Skins of Calves and Colts, that are Tewed; and several colours and shades of one Skin:

so of Cushions made of such Skins that have been neatly Tewed in the Skinners Lime-pit: so of Abortive Skins of Colts and Calyes, at Skinners Lime-pits Tewed, &c.

Furs.

§ 12. Furs of the ensuing Animals, *viz.*.
Furs of Squirrels, and Squirrels Tail, Black
Cats-Tail, Yellow dun Cat, Hares Neck Fern
colour, white Weasels-Tail, Mole, Black Rab-
bet, Yellow Rabbet, Down of a Fox Cub, Ash
coloured at the Roots, Fur of an Old Fox,
Fur of an Old Otter, and Fur of an Otter Cub,
Blackish and Brown soft Fur, and Hair of a
Badgers Skin, that has been Tewed in a Skin-
ners Lime-pit, Marterns Yellow Fur, Filmerts
Fur, Ferrets Fur.

Hackles.

§ 13. Hackles (which are Feathers about a
Cock or Capons Neck, and such as hanging
down on each side, next a Cock or Capons
Tail) of all colours, as the Red, Dun, Yellow-
ish, White Orange coloured, and perfect Black,
these are of especial use to make the Palmer-
fly, or Insect called by some Wool-beds.

Feathers.

Feathers.

§ 14. Feathers of all sort of Fowls, and of all colours, as Feathers on the Back, and other parts of the wild Mallard, or Drake, and Feathers of a Partridge, and of a Partridge-Tail, and Feathers of a brown Hen, Throstle-wing, and Feathers got from the Quills and Pens of the wings of Shepstakes, Stares or Starling, Fieldfare, and Throstle. The Peacocks Heire, Feathers of a Herons Neck, the top or Cop of a Plover, or Lapwing, which will make the black Gnat, the black Feather of an Ostridge or Estridge, and those of various Dyed colours, which Children and others wear in Caps, Feathers from Quills in a Blackbirds Wing and Tail, the black Down of a Water-coot, and Feathers of all other Colours and Birds, &c.

Cadows, and Blanckets.

§ 15. Of Outlandish Cadows, and Blanckets of diverse colours, are very often got excellent Dubbing, so of Cushions made of Abortive Skins of Colts, and Calves, and of Badgers Skins Tewed, &c.

Silks.

§ 16. Silk of all colours, small, but very strong.

Wire,

Wire, and Twist.

§ 17. Silver-Twist, Gold-Twist, Silver-Wire, Gold Wire.

§ 18. A sharp and neat pair of Scissars.

How to make a Dub-Fly.

These materials being ready, you may make your Fly after the following manner, being the most exact way of all others, and it's performed thus, *viz.* You are first to hold the Hook fast betwixt the fore Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, with the back of the shank upwards, and the point towards your Fingers end; then take a strong small Silk of the colour of the Fly you intend to make, (or at least of the most predominant colour of the Fly, if it be of diverse colours) wax it well with Wax of the same colour too, (to which end you are always to have Wax of all colours about you) and draw it betwixt your Finger, and Thumb, to the head of the shank, and then whip it twice or thrice about the bare Hook, which, you must know, is done, both to prevent slipping, and also that the shank of the Hook may not cut the Hairs of your Tought, Gildard or Line; (which sometimes it will otherwise do) which being done, take your Line, and draw it likewise betwixt your Finger and Thumb, holding the Hook so fast, as only to suffer it to pass by, until you have
the

the knot of your Tought almost to the middle of the shank of your Hook, on the inside of it, then whip your Silk twice or thrice about both Hook and Line, as hard as the strength of the Silk will permit, which being done, strip the Feather for the Wings, proportionable to the bigness of your Fly, placing that side downwards, which grew uppermost before, upon the back of the Hook, leaving so much only as to serve for the length of the Wing of the point of the Plume, lying revers'd from the end of the shank upwards, then whip your Silk twice or thrice about the Root-end of the Feather, Hook and Tought, which being done, clip off the root-end of the Feather close by the arming or whipping, and then whip the Silk fast and firm about the Hook and Tought, until you come to the bend of the Hook, but not further (as some do, and thereby make a very unhandsom, unnatural and shapeless Fly) which being done, cut away the end of the Tought or Gildard, and fasten it, and then take your Dubbing which is to make the body of your Fly, as much as you think convenient, and holding it lightly with your Hook, betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, take your Silk with the Right, and twisting it betwixt the Finger and Thumb of that Hand, the Dubbing will spin it self about the Silk, which, when it has done, whip it about the armed Hook backward, till you come to the setting on of the Wings, and then take the Feathers

ther for the Wings, and divide it equally into two parts, and turn them back towards the bend of the Hook, the one on the one side, and the other on the other of the shank, holding them fast in that posture betwixt the Fore-finger and Thumb of your left Hand, which done, warp them so down, as to stand, and slope towards the bend of the Hook, and having wrapt up to the end of the shank, hold the Fly fast betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, and then take the Silk betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your right Hand, and where the warping ends, pinch or nip it with your Thumb-nail against your Finger, and strip away the remainder of your dubbing from the Silk, and then with the bare Silk whip it once or twice about; make the Wings to stand in due order, fasten, and cut it off; after which, with the point of a Needle, raise up the dubbing gently from the warp, twitch or clip off the superfluous Hairs of your dubbing, leave the Wings of an equal length (your Fly will never else swim true) and the work is done. Thus you are to make the Dub-fly: But a Palmer-fly, or Wool-bed is made of a Capon, or Cocks Hackle, twirled on Silk, and warp'd about the Hook, and either with, or without any Wings, and sometimes a little dubbing under the Hackle.

So that you see, by this particular direction, That you are First, to hold your Hook and Line; Secondly, There are to be two or

three whips about the bare Hook ; Thirdly, Joyn the Hook and Line ; Fourthly, Put on your Wings ; Fifthly, twirle and lap on your dubbing ; Sixthly, Work it up towards the head ; Seventhly, Part the Wings ; Eighthly, Nip off the superfluous dubbing from the Silk ; Ninthly, Fasten ; Tenthly, Trim and adjust the Fly.

Rules for Dub-flies, and its Angling.

§ 1. In making Dub-flies, chiefly observe and imitate the Belly of the Fly, for that colour Fish most take notice of, as being most in their Eye ; and let the Wings of the Fly always be of an equal length, else the Fly will not swim right and true.

§ 2. When you try how to fit the colour of the Fly, wet the dubbing, lest you be mistaken ; for, although, when dry, they exactly suit the colour of the Fly ; yet the Water alters most colours, and will make them brighter, or darker.

§ 3. Always make your Dub-flies on a Sun-shine Day ; and to know the exact colour of your dubbing, hold the same betwixt your Eye and the Sun, and you'll far better discover the true colour of the dubbing, than only by looking on it in the Hand, in the House, dark Day, or a shady Place.

§ 4. Never let the Tail of your Dub-fly descend lower, than until you come to the bend

bend of the Hook, and not into the Hooks bent, as they generally do in the *South*, and so make very inartificial, shapeless, and unnatural Flies.

§ 5. When Trout often shew themselves at your Fly, and yet do not take it, be assured that either the Day, or Water is improper for Fly-Angling; or, which is far more probable, your Dub-fly is not of the right colour or shape they then covet.

§ 6. Some always advise to dub with Silk of the most predominant colour of the Fly; but we generally dub Duns with yellow Silk, and our Browns with red Silk, and at *September* with Violet Silk, or Horse-flesh coloured Silk.

7. Flies made of the Hairs of Bears, Hogs, Squirrels Tail, Camels, Dogs, Foxes, Badgers, Otters, Ferrets, Cows, Calves Skins tewed; abortive Calves and Colts Skins tewed, Weasels, Outlandish Cadows, &c. are more natural, lively, and keep colour better in the Water than Flies made of Grewels, and many sort of Worsted Stuffs, which are of a dead and dull colour in the water, therefore to be eschewed, unless you mingle Hair of Bears, or Hogs therewith.

§ 8. The Feather got from the Quill of a Shepstare, Stare, or Starlings Wing, is the best Feather generally to use for Dub-fly wings; then next is the Feathers got from the Quills of the wings of Throstles, Fieldfares, Black-birds, and the Feathers got on

the Back of the wild Mallard, or Drake, and not from the tame one, is used by some for most sort of Flies. If you desire a black Wing, then the said Feather of a Black-bird, if a Red Wing, then Feathers got out of a Partridge Tail, if a brown Wing, then Feathers of the said Thrustle, if a greenish Wing, then Feathers from a Lapwing, or Plover. But however, some use only Feathers of Shepstakes Quills, got out of the wings thereof, for almost all sort of Flies, and affirm there are great variety of shades in the Shepstakes Wings, some being sadder, othets lighter colour'd.

§ 9. The Palmer-fly, Gold Hackle, Silver Hackle, great Dun, dark Brown, early bright Brown, later bright Brown, little whirling Dun, Thorn tree-fly, great whirling Dun, yellow Dun, Dun-cut, green Drake, Stone-fly, Black *May*-fly, Yellow *May*-fly, Badger-fly, Ant-fly, Camlet-fly, and Grey Midge are Flies sufficient to be furnished with. The Hackles and the Stone-fly, being the very ground of all Fly-Angling.

I know an excellent Fly-Angler, that only uses the 3 before-mentioned Hackles, and the great Dun, and these following Flies all the Year, viz. Yellow Dun, made of Dun Bears Hair, and yellow Marterns Fur, Wings of a Shepstakes Quill Feather, and dub'd with yellow Silk. And another Fly made of yellow Marterns Fur, Dun Bears Hair, and Sanded Hogs

Hogs Down, dub'd with Yellow Silk, and the Wings of the Feather of a Shepstares Quill, got out of the Wing. Another Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, blackish Hogs Down, and Yellow Marterns Fur. And another Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, Yellow Marterns Fur, Sanded Hogs Down, and black Hogs Down. Another Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, Camels Hair, and Yellow of a Blanket. And all these three last mentioned Flies, are dub'd with yellowish Silk, and the Wings of Feathers of a Shepstares Wings: Besides the Green Drake and Stone-fly, all which are but 10 in Number.

And the same Angler affirms, That in case you Angle with a Dub-fly, made and mix'd of 2, or 3 colours of Dubbing all together, that if any one Colour, of the said mixture, resemble the true colour of the Natural Fly Fish then take, that Trout, and Salmon Smelts, will take the same Dub fly very well.

§ 10. When you Angle with Dub-fly, it must be in Rivers either clear, or almost clear after Rain, or in a Moorish River, discoloured by Moss or Bogs, or else in a dark, gloomy, cloudy Day, when a gentle gale of Wind moves the Water; but if the Wind be high, yet, so as you may guide your Tools, they will rise well in the plain deeps, and then and there you'll commonly kill the best Fish; but if the Wind be little, or

none at all, you must Angle in the swift Streams.

§ 11. Keep your Dub-fly in continual motion, though the Water or Day be Dark, or Wind blow: otherwise the Fish will discern, and refuse it.

§ 12. If the Water be clear and low, use a small bodied Fly with slender Wings.

§ 13. When you Angle in Rivers discoloured a little by Rain, or passing through Mosses or Bogs, or if the Water be dark or very full, use a larger bodied Fly than ordinary.

§ 14. If the Day be clear, use a light coloured Fly with slender body and Wings.

§ 15. In dark Weather, as well as dark water, the Fly must be dark.

§ 16. As Summer approaches, and water clears, Flies generally are made smaller, and brighter.

§ 17. When you Angle with Dub-fly, your Rod should be no less than 5 yards and a half long, and the Line should be about 7 yards and half long, unless the water be incumbered with Wood or Trees, and when the water banks are free from Wood, or Trees, some use a Line almost twice length of the Rod.

§ 18. Some advise for every Fly to have 3, one of a lighter colour, another sadder, and a third the exact colour of the Natural Fly; by which means, you may the better adapt them to the colour of the water, and

Sky:

Sky : But in my thoughts, if you can dub a Fly of the exact colour of the Natural Fly Fish at that instant take, it's sufficient ; and the other 2 extreams superfluous.

§ 19. Fish rarely take the Dub-fly, in any slow River whose bottom or ground is slime or mud. For in great droughts Fish bite little in any River, but nothing in slimy Rivers, whose mud is not cool'd by the swiftness of the current, but in sandy, gravelly, pebly, stony, or rapid Rivers you may catch Fish at that time.

§ 20. You must have a quick Eye, a nimble Rod and Hand, and strike with the rising of the Fish, or they find their mistake, and put out the Hook again ; others are of opinion never to offer to strike a great Fish, if he do not strike himself, till first you see him turn his Head, after he has taken the Fly, and then say they, the Tackle will not strain in striking, if moderately you strike.

§ 21. When you cast the Fly, wave the Rod with a small circumference about your Head, else the Fly will be very apt to jerk, and snap off, and thereby your Fly lost.

§ 22. When you see a Trout rise, cast the Fly behind him, and then gently draw it over his Head, and if of the right colour, and you scare him not, he's your own.

§ 23. In casting the Fly, do it always before you, so that the Fly may first fall upon the Water (otherwise it will scare the Fish)

and as little of the Line with it as possible, and without circling the Water, though, if the Wind be stiff, you will then be compel'd to drown a great part of the Line, to keep the Fly in the Water; and endeavour to have the Wind on your Back, and the Sun in your Face if you can, but the windings and turnings of the River will render that impossible.

§ 24. When you Angle in slow Rivers, or still Places with the Dub-fly, cast your Fly over cross the River, and let it sink a little in the Water, and draw him gently back again, so as you break not the Water, or raise any circles, or motions thereon, and let the current of the River carry the Fly gently down with the Stream; and this is the best way in slow, slimy bottom'd Rivers for the Dub-fly, otherwise your Fly is to swim on the top.

§ 25. Stand always as far off the Rivers side, as the Rod and Line will give leave. For to fish fine, and far off, is the great Rule in Fly-Angling.

§ 26. In frost and snow, or excessive cold weather in the Spring, Angle with the smallest Gnats, Browns, and Duns you can make.

§ 27. For stony, clear, crystalline River, Flies generally are made with slender Body and Wings, but in dark, discoloured and full Waters, the contrary.

§ 28. When you know not certainly what Fly

Fly is taken, or cannot see Fish rise, then put on a small Hackle if the Water be clear, but bigger if something dark, until you have taken one, then order the matter as you are directed,
Cap. 7. §. 11.

29. Some Persons for some Rivers generally make their Flies of a Cock or Capons Feather or Hackle of diverse colours, which will serve all the Spring especially, and most of Summer, if you but vary and suit the colour of the Silk to the Hackle you Dub with, as for a Dun Hackle, Yellow Silk; a Black Hackle, Sky or Azure-colour'd Silk; a Brown or Red Hackle, Red-coloured Silk, &c. and you may make them either with or without Wings, but better with Wings in most Rivers, and these do truly represent the Insect call'd a Palmer-worm, or (by others) Wool-beds, whose external parts are arm'd or adorn'd with a kind of Wool, or Hair, and at all times of the Year drop into the Water, from the adjacent Bushes and Trees. And with these you may generally catch Fish at any seasonable time, especially on windy days, and the Spring.

§ 30. In all sort of Flies whatever you make, mingle with your Dubbing (unless the Fly be made of Feathers and Silk only) more or less of Bears Hair, Hogs Down, or Yellow Fur of a Marten; but Bears Hair especially if you have it.

§ 31. That the Angler may go dry on his Feet

Feet, let him get a pair of slender Leather Boots to reach as high as his Knee, and before they are cut out, let the Currier very well Liquor them with this following Liquor, which Experience has approved to be excellent for keeping out Water, *viz.* *& Emplastri Diapalma*, and of *De minio composit.* of each 2 Ounces, Hogs Grease rendered half a Pound; melt them together, keeping continual stirring it, and when used let it be warm, and afterwards as often as occasion is; if you'll take pains you may Liquor your Shooes or Boots therewith.

C H A P. XXXV.

Of Artificial Fly-Angling, and particularly Dub-flies.

I Did once determine to have wholly omitted any particular Description of Dub-flies, for the Reasons already deliver'd in the beginning of the 34th Chapter of this Book. Yet, notwithstanding such Resolution, I think it not amiss to insert two Catalogues, that will serve as a Basis for any person, with discreet Variations and Observations, to raise a Superstructure for his own particular Country and Use, in any part

part of *England*; and will afford no mean light to the perfect Understanding and Attainment of the Art of Dub-fly-Angling, which is as delightsom a way of Angling as any whatsoever, if the River you frequent, be but plentifully stord with Fish; and herewith there is but little or no alteration of the bait for the whole day, and you are not to use either Lead or Float, but the Fly is always to be on the very surface or top of the water, and you are to Angle going down the River, and begin to cast the Fly either from the head or side of the Stream or Water: And I will begin with *Februry*, that being early enough for any Gentleman to enter on this Recreation, by reason of the wetness and coldness of the Weather at that time: The first of *March* being commonly assoon as ever I begun to Angle, and *Michaelmas* day or St. *Luke's* day the time of the year I desist from that Sport, and, and then I repair all the Angling Tackle, both Rods and Lines, that have been any ways damnified in the preceding Summers service; and orderly dispose of the same to be in a compleat readiness the following Spring.

*Dub-flies for February.**Little Red Brown*

§ 1. Is made of the Fur of the black spot of a Hog's Ear (because there it's softest) warpt on with red Silk, Wings of the Male of a Mallard almost white.

Palmer-fly or Plain Hackle

§ 2. Is made with a rough, black body, either of black Spaniels Fur, or the Whirl of an Ostridge Feather, and the red Hackle of a Capon over all.

Silver Hackle

§ 3. Made with a black body also, Silver Twist over that, and a red Feather over all.

Great Hackle,

§ 4. The Body black, and wrapped with a red Feather of a Capon untrim'd, that is, the whole length of the Hackle staring out (for sometimes we barb the Hackle Feather short all over, sometimes barb it only a little, and sometimes barb it close underneath) leaving the whole length of the Feather on the top, or

or back of the Fly; which makes it swim better, and on a whirling round Water, kills great Fish.

Gold Hackle,

§ 5. The Body black, rib'd over with Gold Twist, and a red Feather over all, does great execution,

Great Dun,

§ 6. Made with dun Bears Hair, and the wings of the grey Feather of a Mallard near unto his Tail, the very best Fly for this Month, and makes admirable Sport.

Great Blew Dun,

§ 7. Dubbing of the bottom of Bears Hair next to the Roots, mixt with a little Blew Camlet, the wings of the dark grey Feather of a Mallard.

Dark Brown.

§ 8. Dubbing of the brown Hair of the Flank of a bred Cow, and the grey Feather of a Drake for Wings.

These Hackles are some for one Water and Sky, and some for another, and accordingly the size and colour are alter'd, and use a small Hackle,

Hackle, if the Water be clear, or a bigger, if something dark ; and when you cannot know certainly in this Month or any other, what Fly is taken, put on a small Hackle, if the water be clear, but bigger, if something dark, and the first Fish you take, proceed with him as you are directed, Cap. 7. §. 11.

Dub-flies for March.

Use all the same Hackles and Flies with February, but make them less.

Little Whirling Dun.

§ 1. Made of the bottom Fur of a Squirrels Tail, and the Wings of the Grey Feather of a wild Drake or Mallard.

Early Bright Brown.

§ 2. Made either of the Brown of a Spaniel, or of the Hair of a Red Cows Flank with a Grey Wing.

Whitish Dun.

§ 3. Made of the Roots of Camels Hair, Wings of a wild Mallards Grey Feather.

Thorn-

Thorn-tree-fly.

§ 4. Dubbing of an absolute Black, mix'd with 8 or 10 Hairs of Isabella coloured Mo-hair, the Body as little as can be made, Wings of a bright wild Mallards Feather ; an admirable Fly, and in great repute for a killer.

Blew Dun.

§ 5. Comb the Neck of a Black Grey-hound with a small Tooth Comb, and the Down that sticks in its Teeth is a fine Blue, wherewith dub this Fly ; the Wings can scarce be too white ; and it's taken from the Tenth till the Twenty fourth.

Little Black Gnat.

§ 6. Is taken from the Tenth, until almost the end of this Month, made either of the Fur of a black Water Dog, or the Down of a young black Water Coot, the Wings of the Male of a wild Mallard, as white as may be, the Body as little as you can possible make it, and the Wings as short as the Body. Some make the Body of the cop, or top Feather on the Head of a Plover or Lapwing.

Later

Later bright Brown.

§ 7. Is taken from the Sixteenth, to the Tenth of April, Dubbing to be got out of a Skinners Lime-pits, and of the Hair of an abortive Calf, which the Lime will turn to be so bright, as to shine like Gold. Wings of the Feather of a brown Hen is best.

Dub-flies for April.

All the same Hackles and Flies that are taken in March, will be taken in April also, with this distinction only, concerning the Flies, that all the Browns be lap'd with red Silk, and the Duns with yellow Silk.

Small bright Brown.

§ 1. Made of Spaniels Fur, with a light Grey Wing, in a bright Day and clear Water, is very well taken.

Little dark Brown,

§ 2. The Dubbing of dark Brown, and Violet Camlet mix'd, Grey Feather of a wild Mallard for Wings.

Great

Great whirling Dun.

§ 3. From the Twelfth of this Month, is taken all the Month through about mid time of the day, and by fits, from thence to the end of June; and is one of the best Flies we have; it is commonly made of the Down of a Fox Cub, which is of an Ash colour, at the Roots next the Skin, and rib'd about with Yellow Silk, the Wings of the pale grey feather of a wild mallard.

Violet Fly,

§ 4. From the Sixth to the Tenth of this Month is taken, made of a dark Violet Stuff, and a very little Dun Bears Hair mix'd therewith, wild Mallards grey feather for Wings.

Yellow Dun,

§ 5. Dubbing of Camels Hair, and Yellow Camlet, or Yellow Wooll of a Blanket, well mix'd, (and some add Bears Hair) and a white Grey Wing, Others dub it of Dun Hair of a Bear, and some Yellow Fur of a Marten mix'd therewith, and dub it with Yellow Silk, and the Wings of the feather got from the Quill of a Shepstakes Wing. And it's an excellent Fly both for April and May.

Horse-flesh fly

§ 6. Is taken best in an Evening, and kills best from 2 hours before Sun-set until Twilight, and is taken the Month through, Dubbing of blew Mohair with Pink coloured, and Red Tammy mix'd, a light coloured Wing, and a dark brown Head. It begins to be taken best about the Twentieth of the Month.

Dub-flies for May.

All the same Hackles and Flies, the Hackles only brighter, and the Flies smaller, that are taken in *April*, will also be taken in *May*, likewise all Browns and Duns.

Next, follow 7 of the very prime Flies for *May*, and indeed of all the Year, especially the Duncut, Green-drake and Stone-fly; and then 9 of small esteem, in comparison with the first 7, yet such as will kill Fish too.

Duncut

§ 1. Is the first of the 7, its Dubbing is of Bears Dun Hair, with a little Blew and Yellow mix'd with it, a large Dun wing, and 2 Horns at the Head, made of the Hair of a Squirrels Tail; and is a very killing Fly.

The

The next are 4 Flies which contend for the Title of *May-fly*, but the Green-drake, which is taken both in streams and stills, and that at all Hours of the Day, whilst in Season, and the Stone-fly taken early and late, but not very well in the mid time of the Day, have the preheminence of the black *May-fly*, and little Yellow *May-fly*, by the general vogue of Anglers.

Green-drake described.

§ 2. At full maturity his Wings stand high, and closed exact upon his Back, like the Butter-fly, and his motion in flying is the same, his Body is in some of a paler, in others of a darker Yellow (for they are not all exactly of a colour) rib'd with rows of Green, long, slender, and growing sharp towards the Tail; at the end of which, he has three long, small Whisks, of a very dark colour, almost Black; and his Tail turns up towards his Back, like a Mallard, from whence he has his name of Green-drake.

Green drakes season, and Dabbing.

He comes in about mid *May*, and is taken until *Midsummer* in Mountainous Stony Rivers; far earlier in others, and that at all Hours, as aforesaid, and is made thus, *viz.* on a large Hook the Dabbing Camels Hair, bright Bears

Hair, the soft Down combed from a Hog's Bristles, and yellow Camlet well mixt together, the Body long, and rib'd about with green Silk, or rather yellow Silk wuxt with green Wax, the Whisks of the Tail of the long Hair of Sables, or Fitchet; and the Wings of the white grey feather of a wild Mallard dyed yellow, which is dyed thus: *Viz.*

Take the Root of a Barberry-Tree, and shave it, and put to it Wood-Ivi's, with as much Allum as a Wallnut, and boyl the feathers in it with Rain-water, and they will be of a very fine and curious Yellow. You may try whether the inner Park of a Crab-tree boyl'd with some Allum in Water, will not do the same, and make a fine Yellow; which I am informed it will, but never experienced it

Stone fly described.

§ 3. The Stone-fly lies under hollow Stones at the Riverside, his Body is long, and pretty thick, and as broad at the Tail almost as in the middle, his colour of a very fine brown, rib'd with yellow, and much yellower on the Belly, than the Back, he hath two or three Whisks also at the tag of his Tail, and two little Horns on his Head, his Wings, when full grown, are double, and flat down his Back, of the same colour, but rather darker than his Body, and longer than it, though he makes

but

but little use of them ; for he rarely flies, tho' often swims and paddles with several Feet he has under his Belly, upon the Water without stirring a Wing ; but the Drake will mount Steeple height into the Air, tho' he's found upon Flags and Grafs too, and indeed every where high and low near the River.

The Stone-fly's Season and Dubbing.

The Stone-fly comes in about middle of April, and continues until the end of June or Midsummer ; it's proper for Streams, rather than stills, and taken best early and late, but not so well at the mid time of the day ; if there be a whistling Wind, then it may be taken in the deep stills of the River : It's a very killing Fly, and you may Angle with the Natural one within the Water at bottom, or near it, or at mid Water, if you pull away the Wings from the Body, and in that manner, it will sometimes be better taken than one with wings on. The Artificial Stone-fly is made of Bears dun Hair, with a little brown and yellow Camlet well mixt, but so placed, that the fly may be more yellow on the belly, and towards the Tail underneath, than in any other part, and you are to place two or three Hairs of a black Cats Beard on the top of the Hook, in the arming or whipping, so as to be turn'd up when you warp on your Dubbing, and to stand almost upright, and staring one from

another: And note, that this Fly is to be rib'd with yellow Silk, and Wings long and very large, of the dark grey Feather of the wild Mallard, or (which I intend to to try) of the brown, soft feather of a Kite, or rather of the feather got out of the Wing of a Throstle, or feather of a Quill in a Throstle-wing. Sometimes you may dibble with an Artificial Stone-fly, in the still deeps, in an Evening, if any gentle gale of Wind or Breeze furl them.

Black May-fly

§ 4. Is the next *May-fly* made with a black body of the Whirl of an Ostridge-feather, rib'd with Silver Twist, and the black Hackle of a Cock or or Capon, over all; and is a killing Fly, but not to be compared with the Green-drake or, *Stone-fly*.

Little yellow May fly

§ 5. Being the last of the four, of the same shape of the Green-drake, but a very little one, of as bright a yellow as can be seen, made of a bright yellow Camlet, Wings of a white-grey feather dyed yellow. But some dub it with yellow Fur of a Martern.

Grey

Grey Drake.

§ 6. Is in all shapes and dimensions perfectly the same with the Green-drake, but quite almost of another colour, being of a paler and more livid Yellow, and green and rib'd with black, quite down his Body, with black shining Wings, diaphanous and very tender, Cob-web-like, it comes in, and is taken after the Green-drake, and in a Dub-fly, kills very well. It's made of the whitish Down of a Hog's Bristles, and black Spaniels Fur mixt, and rib'd down the body with black Silk, the Whisks of the Tail, of the Hair of the Beard of a black Cat, and the Wings of the black grey feather of the wild Mallard.

Camlet fly.

§ 7. Is taken from the middle of *May*, until the end of *June*, is in shape like a Moth, with fine Diapred or water Wings, and made of a dark brown shining Camlet, rib'd over with very small light green Silk, and the Wings of the double grey feather of a wild Mallard, and is a very killing Fly for Graylings and small fish.

I had thought here to have put a period to the description of any more flies for *May*; yet since there are nine flies of small esteem comparatively with the foregoing 7, I will insert

them for the Readers sake, who is at Liberty either to use or reject them, as his fancy is.

Turky Fly,

§ 8. Dubbing ravel'd out of some blew Stuff, and lap'd about with yellow Silk, the Wings of a grey wild Mallards feather.

Yellow Palmer

§ 9. Made with a yellow body, rib'd with Gold Twist, and large Wings of a wild Mallard's feather dy'd yellow, with the red Hackle of a Capon over all.

Black Fly,

§ 10. Dubbing of black Spaniels Fur, and the Wings of a grey wild Mallards feather.

Light Brown

§ 11. Made of a light Brown with a slender body, the Dubbing twirl'd upon small red Silk, and raised with the point of a Needle, that the ribs or rows of Silk may appear through, the Wings of the Grey feather of a wild Mallard.

Little

Little Dun,

§ 12. Dubbing of Bears dun Hair whirled upon Yellow Silk, Wings of a wild Mallards Grey feather.

White Gnat,

§ 13. With a pale Wing, and a black Head.

Peacock Fly,

§ 14. Body made of the whirl of a Peacocks feather with a red Head, and Wings of a wild Mallards feather.

Cow-lady,

§ 15. A little Fly, the body of a Peacocks feather, the Wings of a red feather, or stripes of the red Hackle of a Cock.

Cow-turd-fly,

§ 16. Dubbing light Brown and Yellow mix'd, the Wings of the dark Grey feather of a wild Mallard.

Dub-

Dub-flies for June.

From the first to the Twenty fourth are taken the Green-drake, and Stone-fly; and all the Month the Camblet-fly.

Owl-fly,

§ 1. Is taken from the twelfth to the twenty fourth, late at Night; Dubbing of a white Weasels Tail, and white Grey Wing.

Barm-fly,

§ 2. Dubbing of the Fur of a Yellow Dun Cat, and the grey Wings of a wild Mallards feather.

Purple Hackle,

§ 3. Made with a Purple Body, whip'd about with a red Capons feather.

Purple Gold Hackle,

§ 4. Made with a Purple Body, Gold twist over that, all whip'd about with a Red Capons feather,

Flesh

Flesh-fly.

§ 5. Dubbing of a black Spaniels Fur, and
blew Wool mix'd, and a Grey Wing.

Little Flesh-fly,

§ 6. The Body made of the Whirl of a
Peacocks feather, and the Wings of the grey
feather of a wild Drake.

Peacock fly,

§ 7. The Body and Wings both made of
the feather of that Bird.

Ant-fly,

§ 8. Dubbing of brown and red Camlets
mix'd with a light Grey Wing.

Brown Gnat,

§ 9. Made with a very slender Body, of
brown and Violet Camlets mix'd well toge-
ther with a light Grey Wing.

Little Black Gnat.

§ 10. Dubbing of black Mohair, and a white
Grey Wing.

Green

Green Grasshopper,

§ 11. Dubbing of Green and Yellow Wooll mix'd, rib'd over with Green Silk, and a red Capons feather over all.

Dun Grasshopper.

§ 12. The Body slender, made of Dun Camlet, and a Dun Hackle at top.

Brown Hackle.

§ 13. Made of the light brown Hair of a fat Colt, with a red Hackle over all, wrap'd with Ash coloured, or Hair coloured Silk.

*Dub-flies for July.**Badger Fly.*

§ 1. Dubbing of the soft brown Fur of a Badgers Skin (that has been tewed in the Skinners Lime-pits) twirl'd upon red Silk, with a red Head, and a sad Grey Wing of a wild Mallards feather; an excellent Fly for this Month in many Rivers, and it's also taken in many Rivers in *March* and *April*.

Orange-

Orange fly,

§ 2. Dubbing of Orange coloured Woll,
and the Wings of the feather of a Black-birds
Quill.

Little White Dun,

§ 3. Body made of white Mohair, and the
Wings of a Herons blew Feather.

Wasp fly,

§ 4. Made either of dark brown Dubbing,
or else of the Fur of a black Cats Tail, rib'd
about with Yellow Silk, Wings of the Grey
feather of a wild Mallard.

Black Hackle,

§ 5. The Body made of the Whirl of a
Peacocks Feather, and a black Hackle Fea-
ther on the top; there is also another, made
of a Peacocks Herle without any Wings.

Shell fly,

§ 6. Dubbing of Yellow Green Jersey
Wooll, and a little white Hogs Hair mixt.

Black

Black Blew Dun,

§ 7. The Dubbing of the Fur of a black Rabbit, mix'd with a little Yellow, the Wings of the Feather of a blew Pidgeons Wing.

Dub-flies for August.

First, all the same Flies with *July*, also all Browns and Duns are taken, that were taken in *May*.

Late Ant fly,

§ 1. Dubbing of the black brown Hair of a Cow, some red warp'd in for the tag of the Tail, and a dark Wing; a very killing Fly.

Fern fly,

§ 2. Dubbing of the Fur of a Hares Neck, that is of the Colour of Fern, or Brackin, with a darkish Grey Wing of a wild Mallards Feather.

White Hackle,

§ 3. The Body of white Mohair, and wrapped about with a white Hackle Feather.

Harry

Harry Long-Legs,

§ 4. The Body made of Bears Dun and Blew Wooll mixt, and a brown Hackle Feather over all.

Dub-flies for September.

This Month the same Flies are taken, that were taken in *April*, and also the

Camel Brown Fly,

§ 1. The Dubbing pull'd out of the Lime of a Wall, whipt about with Red Silk, and a darkish Grey wild Mallards Feather for Wings.

Late Badger Fly,

§ 2. Made of the black Hair of a Badgers Skin, mixt with the Yellow softest Down of a fanded Hog.

October's Dub-flies.

The same Flies are taken in *October*, that were taken in *March*.

Notwithstanding the wild Mallards Feather is

is generally prescribed for the Wings of Dub-flies in the preceding Catalogue of Flies; yet the feathers got from the Pens and Quills of the Wings of the Shepstare, Stare, or Starling is to be prefer'd, and better by many degrees than the Mallards feather; and sometimes for brown Wings, the feathers got from the Quills of a Throstle-wing, is excellent.

Another Catalogue of Flies, practised by a very good Angler, and useful to be known by the young Anglers, in clear Stony Rivers.

Dub-flies for February.

Prime Dun.

§ 1. Dubbing of the Down of a Fox Cub, dub'd with fad Ash-colour'd Silk, Wings of the feather got from the Quill of a Shepstares Wing. This Fly is made little, but there is another made of the same Dubbing but larger by far.

Dub-flies for March.

The same Flies taken in *February*, will be taken in *March*, and also the subsequent.

Moorish

Moorish Brown

§ 1. Dub'd of the Wooll of a black Sheep,
and Red Silk, Wings of the feather got from
a Partridge VVings.

Palm Fly,

§ 2. Made of Hair of a brown Spaniel got
on the outside of the Ear, and a little Sea-green
Wooll mixt, Dub'd with brown Cloth-colou-
red Silk, Wings of the feather of a Shepstare
Quill got out of the Wing.

Green Tail,

§ 3. Made of the brown Hair of a Spaniel;
got on the outside of the Ear, but a little in
the end of the Tail, must be all of Sea-green
Wooll without mixture, Wings as the last.

Dub-flies for April.

Bright Bear,

§ 1. Made of bright Bears Hair,, Dub'd
with sad Cloth coloured Silk, Wings of the fea-
ther of a Shepstares Quill; others dub the Bo-
dy with yellow Silk, which is better.

Q

Yellow

Yellow Dun

§ 2. Made of Yellow Wooll, and Ash-coloured Fox Cub Down mixt together, Dub'd with Yellow Silk, Wings of the Feather of a Shepstakes Quill: others Dub it with Dun Bears Hair, and the yellow Fur got from a Marterns Skin mixt together, and with yellow Silk, Wings of the feather of a Shepstakes Quill. Make two other Flies, their bodies Dub'd as the last, but in the one mingle sanded Hogs Down, and in the other black Hogs Down, and the Wings of the feather of a Shepstakes Quill. and there is also taken an excellent Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, yellow Marterns Fur, sanded Hogs Down, and black Hogs Down, all mixt in an equal proportion together dub'd with Yellow Silk, and the Wings of the feather of a Shepstakes Quill got out of the wing: these Flies mentioned for April are very good, and will be taken almost all the Spring and Summer.

Note once for all, That the yellow Fur got from a Marterns Skin is absolutely the very best Yellow of any whatsoever, either to dub with, or mingle with other dubbing.

Dub-

Dub-flies for May.

Thorn Fly

§ 1. Dubbing of black Lambs Wooll, and Dub'd with black Silk, Wings of a Mallards light Grey; Note that all the Feathers got from Mallards for Wings, ought to be got from a wild Mallard, and not from a tame one.

Knop Fly

§ 2. Made of the Down of an Otter Cub, warpt about with the Herle of a Peacock, and dub'd with black Silk, Wings of the light grey feather of a Mallard.

Fern Bud.

§ 3. This Fly is got on Fern, and the natural one is a very good Fly to dib with; it is but of a short thick Body, of a very sad Greenish colour, and hath two pair of Wings; the uppermost are hard, and sometimes taken off, but the undermost are diaphanous and tender; it's dub'd with the Herle of a Peacock, and very sad Green-colour'd Silk, Wings of the feather of a Felfare Quill got out of the Wing.

Little Dun.

§ 4. Dubbing of an Otters Fur, dub'd with Ash-coloured Silk, Wings of the feather of a Shepstakes Quill.

Yellow May Fly,

✓ § 5. The Body made of yellow Wooll mixt with yellow Fur of a Martern, Dub'd with yellow Silk, Wings of the lightest coloured feather of a Throstle.

*Dub-flies for June.**Black Midge, or Gnat,*

§ 1. Made of the Down of a Mole, Dub'd with black Silk, Wings of the light Grey feather of a Shepstakes Quill.

Grey Midge, or Gnat,

§ 2. Dubbing of the Down of a sad Grey Cat, or sad Grey Camels Hair, Dub'd with Grey Silk, Wings of the Grey feather of a Mallard.

Purple

Purple fly,

§ 3. Made of Purple Wooll, and a little Bears Hair mixt with it, and sometimes no Bears hair at all; Wings of the feather of a Shepstakes Quill, dub'd with Purple Silk.

Sand Fly

§ 4. Made of the Wooll gotten off the Flank of a black Sheep, Dub'd with black Silk, Wings of the sad coloured feather of a Throstle Quill; others make the body of the feather of a Herons Neck.

Mackerill

Dubbing of light brown Camels Hair, Dub'd with black Silk, Wings of a Red Cocks feather.

Dub-fies for July.

Blue Dunn,

§ 1. Made of the Down of a Water-Mouse, and the bleuish Dun of an Old Fox mixt together, Dub'd with sad Ash-coloured Silk; Wings of the feather of a Shepstare Quill.

*August Flies.**Buss Brown,*

§ 1. Made of the light brown Hair of the Ear of a Cur, the Head black, Wings of the feather of a Red Hen, whipt with Orange colour'd Silk.

Hearth Fly,

§ 2. Made of the Wooll of an old black Sheep with some Grey Hairs in it for the body and Head, Wings Dub'd with black Silk, Wings of the light feather of a Shepstakes Quill.

Pismire Fly,

✓ § 3. Make the Body of bright brown Bears Hair twirl'd upon Red Silk, Wings of the saddest colour'd feather got from the Quill of a Shepstakes Wing, a good fly.

*September's Fly.**Little Blue Dun.*

✓ § 1. Made of the Down of a Mouse for Body and Head, dub'd with sad Ash-coloured Silk;

Silk; Wings of the sad coloured feather of a Shepstakes Quill,

Note, that the feather got from the Quills, or Pens of Shepstakes Wings, Throstles Wings, Fieldfare Wings are generally better (the 2 first especially) to use for Dub-fly Wings, than those got from a wild Mallard or Drake.

Thus have I presented you with 2 Catalogues of Flies, the one consisting of about 65 Flies, the other of about 20 Flies, proper for Trout, Graylings and Salmon Smelts, in Mountainous stony Rivers; which, although the Lists be large and numerous, yet a few of them will be sufficient to be stored with, and will serve all the Year for almost any River.

C H A P. XXXVI.

How to Angle for the great Trout with a Minnow or Loach.

§ 1. **Y**ou may Angle with a Minnow, or small Loach thus, to be baited on a large siz'd Hook, viz. put the Hook in at his Mouth, and out at his Guill, then having drawn the Hook 2 or 3 inches beyond, or through his Guill, put it again into his Mouth, and the point and beard out at his Tail, then draw your Line straight, so that the Body of

the Minnow will be almost straight on the Hook ; and close his mouth that no Water get in, which you must avoid, or you may stitche up his Mouth, or you may (when you set on the Hook) fasten some Hogs Bristles under the Silk, leaving the points above a Straws breadth and a half, or almost half an inch standing outwards the Line, which will keep him from slipping back ; this done, try how it will turn by drawing it cross the Water, or against a Stream, and if it do not turn nimibly, then turn the Tail a little to the right or left hand, till it turn quick, otherwise you'll catch nothing ; you must also have a Swivel or Turn in this way, as well as for Pikes (the Swivel makes the Minnow play better, and preserves the Line from snarling by turning) placed about a yard or more from the Hook ; you need no Lead on your Line ; You must continually draw your bait up the Stream, within half a foot, or a foot of the superficies of the water ; in the same manner Angle with a small Loach or Bull-head, his Guill-fin cut off. And you are always to Angle this way in a clear water, and in the Stream, or on very windy days, that will furl the water in the plain deeps, and only in the Months of *March, April, September and October.* You may thus also Angle for the Pike and Pearch.

C H A P. XXXVII.

*The various ways of Angling for
the Pike.*

§ 1. Trowing for Pike is very pleafant, and the Trowl may be bought ready made, only let it have a Winch to wind it up withal; and you must always Angle therewith in a clear water, and, if possible, on a windy day. And some prefer a single Hook before the double Pike-hook, and bait with a Minnow, as well to catch Pearch as Pike, by Trowing.

Trowing Tackle, &c.

§ 2. For this Fish, your Tackle muſt be strong, your Rod muſt be long, and not very slender at the top, where you muſt place a small slender Ring for your Line to run through. Let your Line be Silk, for at least 2 yards next the Hook, and the rest 4 or 6 folds of the very beſt and neatiest spun Hemp-yarn, and curiouſly twisted, 18 or 30 yards long; your Hook double and strongly armed with Wire, for above a foot; then, with a Probe or Needle, you muſt draw the Wire in at the Fishes Mouth, and out at his Tail, that

so the Hook may lie in the Mouth of the Fish, and both the points on either side; upon the shank of the Hook, fasten some Lead very smooth, that it go into the Fishes Mouth, and sink her with the head downwards, as though she had been playing on the top of the Water, and were returning to the bottom: Your bait may be a large Gudgeon, Bleak, Minnow, small Trout, small Roch or Dace, small Salmon Smelts, Pearch, his uppermost Back-fins cut off, a piece of an Eel, Loach, or sometimes a Frog, in Hay time. Your Hook thus baited, you must tie the Tail of the Fish close and fast to the Wire, or else with drawing to and again, the Fish will rend off the Hook; or, which is neater, with a Needle and strong Thread, stitch through the Fish on either side of the Wire, and tye it very fast. Weeds are destructive to baits, especially when they are strong and tough, so that if you be not careful in tying the Tail of the the bait fast to the joint of the Wire, the Weeds will spoil it before the Pike come.

How to Trawl.

§ 3. All being thus fitted, cast your Fish up and down in such places as you know the Pike frequents, observing still that he sink some depth before you pull him up again; when the Pike cometh (if it be not sunk deep) you may see the Water move, at least you may feel

feel him, then slack your Line, and give him length enough to run away to his hold, whether he'll go directly, and there pouch or swallow it; ever beginning (as you may perceive) with the Head, swallowing that first; thus let him lie until you see the Line move in the Water, and then you may certainly conclude, he hath pouched or swallowed the Bait, and ranged abroad for more; then, with the Trowl, wind up your Line (which should always be 20 or 30 yards at least) till you think you have it almost straight; then, with a smart jerk, hook him, and make your Pleasure and Pastime to your content and satisfaction.

§ 4. Some use no Rod at all, but holding the Line on Links on their hand, using Lead and Float.

§ 5. Others use a very great Hook, with the Hook at the Tail of the Fish, and when the Pike cometh, they strike at the first pull of the Pike.

§ 6. Others use to put a strong String or Thread in at the Mouth of the Bait, and out at one of the Guills, and so over the Head, and in at the other Guill, and so tye the Bait to the Hook, leaving a little length of Thread or String betwixt the Fish and Hook, that so the Pike may turn the head of the Bait the better to swallow it, and then, as before, after some pause, strike pretty smartly. If any Weed hang on your bait, the Pike will refuse it.

§ 7. Some

§ 7. Some use to tye the Bait, Hook and Line to a Bladder, or bundle of Flags or Bullrushes, fastening the Line very gently in the cleft of a small stick, to hold the bait from sinking more than (its allowed length) half a yard, and the stick must be fastened to the Bladder or Flags, to which the Line being tyed, that it might easily unfold, and run to its length, and so give the Pike liberty to run away with the Bait, and by the Bladder or Flags recover their Line again; you must observe this way to turn off your Bait, with the Wind or Stream, that they may carry it away, or some use (for more sport) if the Pike be a great one, and in a Pond, to tie the same to the Foot of a Goose, which the Pike if large, will sometimes pull under the Water.

Angling for the Pike at Snap.

§ 8. When you Fish for the Pike at Snap, you must give him leave to run a little, then strike; but be sure to strike the contrary way to that which he runneth; a double spring Hook is principally, if not only useful in this way of Angling, and much to be preferred before all Hooks; for the Pike will usually hold the bait so fast in his Teeth that you may fail to pull it out of his Mouth, and also strike him, whereas with a spring Hook though he hold it never so fast, the Wire will draw through the Bait, and so the spring will open,

and

and you will very frequently Hook him on the outside of his Mouth: Angling with Trowl is a surer, at least a more easy way for a learner to practise, (who wants an Instructer) than the Snap ; besides, the Snap is chiefly useful to take a Pike, which often pricking with the Trowl hath made wary and cunning (for one that hath not been scared will swallow the Bait boldly) such an one is best taken at Snap, and the Snap is best for *March*, when the Pike bites ill, because they spawn then, and are sick.

How to Bait for the Snap.

§ 9. In this way of Angling put on your Bait thus, *viz.* make a hole with the point of your Hook or Probe, in the Fishes side, as near the middle as you can, put in your Armed Wire, and draw it out at the Mouth, and with a Needle and Thread sew up the Fishes Mouth.

Others use the Probe to draw the Arming Wire under the Skin only (not the Ribs by any means) and out at the Bone behind the Guills, then again under the Guills and out at the Mouth ; this latter way is much better, because there is only the Skin to hinder the drawing and piercing of the Hook ; whereas the former way, if the Pike hold fast (as commonly he doth) all the Flesh on the outside of the fish will be drawn into a heap or lump,

lump, so thick, that the Hook (except very large) can hardly reach through it to pierce the Pikes Chaps.

Observe that the Pike will feed to that excess and fullness that he cannot gorge your bait, yet will he rise and shew himself, and make many offers, having such a good will to it, that you may often catch him with the Snap.

Rules for Pike Angling.

§ 1. After he hath taken your bait if he move slowly and make no stop, give him time, and you'll seldom miss him; cast not the bait in one and the same place above once or twice at most; for he commonly takes the bait at first or second throw.

§ 2. Or if he lye after he hath taken the bait (as sometimes he will) gently move your hand, to try which way his Head lieth; if you cannot discover that, then strike directly upwards, otherwise you may (instead of Hooking him) pluck the bait out of his Mouth.

§ 3. If he take it upon the top of the water, and lie still, you see which way his Head lieth, and may order your self accordingly.

§ 4. At the Snap your Tackle must be stronger than for the Trowl, in regard you must strike much more forcibly; your best Lines are made of Green or Sky-colour'd Silk, 30 yards

yards long for the Trowl. Next are those of Green Thread or Hemp.

§ 5. At the Snap you must give two lusty jerks one after the other, and be sure you ever strike contrary to the way his Head lieth, lest you pull the bait from him only.

§ 6. Fasten your Swivel to the end of your Line (for you must use a Swivel both at Trowl and Snap) and Hook your Armed Wire upon the Swivel.

§ 7. For the Snap cast a piece of Lead hollow, and so wide as to go over the Wire, and the end of the Hook, which you draw within the Fishes Mouth; let it lie there to sink his Head downwards, make it so rough that it slip not out, or few up the Fishes Mouth, which is better than to place the Lead upon the Line, (as some use) for the Lead will very often slip further, and also entangle the Bait and Line together.

§ 8. Both at Snap and with Trowl, cut away one of the Fins of the Bait close at the Guills, and also behind the vent, another on the contrary side; the bait will play better.

§ 9. In casting with Trowling, or at Snap, be sure to raise your Hand a little when you see the bait ready to fall into the Water; this will prevent that the bait dash not violently into the Water in its fall, which affrights the Pike (though he be a bold Fish) when it falls behind and near unto him: After your bait is in, then let it sink a little then draw it towards you,

you, near to the top, then let it sink again, &c.

§ 10. Make your Lead for the Trowl four square, and much thicker and shorter than most use, the Square will keep the Hook in the same place as you set it, and the thick short Lead sinks him with his head downwards, so that he will not shoot slopewise, as he doth when the Lead is long.

§ 11. Join your Wire Links together with a steel Ring; the Bait will play and sink better, if it lie only in the Baits Mouth, it will not entangle in the Line so often. *February, April, beginning of May, September and October,* are the chief Months for Trowling, and *March* for the Snap.

§ 12. A larger bait doth more invite the Pike, but a lesser takes him more surely, as soonest gorged or swallowed, and the Hook certainly taken into his Mouth both at Snap and Trowl. Two or three baits will serve all the day, and bait them before you go to Angle, and use one until it be water-sopt.

§ 13. Use a large white Minnow, or large Loach, put on with the Hook in his Mouth, Angle with him for a Pike as you do for a Trout, and let your Hook be small; use not a great Hook with a small Bait, nor a great Bait with a small Hook. You may catch both Pikes and Pearches, if you Trowl with a Minnow or Loach, or small Gudgeon, and have not too big a Hook. You must always Trowl in a clear

clear Water, and if possible in a windy day. When the Water is Transparent and the day clear and bright, a large Gudgeon is the best Bait for Pike, but if the day be dark or cloudy, Roch, Dace, or a Bleak new taken, are the best Baits can be made use of.

Angling for Pike with a Minnow.

Get a single Hook, long and slender in the shank, put Lead upon it, as thick near the bent as will go into the Minnow's Mouth, place the point of the Hook directly up the Face of the Fish, let the Rod be as long as you can handsomly mannage, with a Line of the same length, cast up and down, and mannage it as when you trowl with any other Bait; if, when the Pike hath taken it, he run to the end of the Line before he hath gorged or swallowed it, do not strike, but hold still only, and he will return back and swallow it, but if you use that Bait with a Trowl, some esteem it the very best for Pike, especially if you use a Swivel. You may use a large Loach after the same manner for the Pike, as also a Gudgeon, Bleak, &c.

The manner of Snaring young Pikes or Jacks.

In May, June and July, in a clear, calm, hot gleamy day, Pikes soar on the Waters surface, or near it, then fix a Snare or Running-noose

R of

of Wire to the end of a strong Pack-thread, a yard and half long, and the other end of the Pack-thread to a long Pole or Goad that is mannageable: Your Snare or Running noose, aforesaid, being open, you may observe Jacks to lie on the top of the Water, and you may easily put the Snare over them, and, with a quick and smart jerk, hoist them amain to Land. This way I have taken many, near Oxford.

Hooking Pikes in Ditches.

Or you may, at that time, take a Line of 7 or 8 foot, and thereunto arm or whip a Hook of the largest size, and lead the shank of the Hook neatly, that the weight may guide it at pleasure, and you may strike the Pike with the bare Hook where you please, when they go a Frogging into Ditches, in *May, June and July*; and you see them soaring on the superficies of the Water. Or you may whip four Hooks to such a Line, the points of each a quarter of a circle distant from each other, and all whipt together, &c.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Of Fish-ponds.

WHEN the Ground is drained, and the Earth made firm, where the Ponds head must be, in that place drive two or three rows of Oak or Elm Piles, and lay Faggots of smaller Wood betwixt them, and Earth betwixt and above them, very well rammed; and then set another row of Piles as the first were; which should be about the heighr you intend to make the Sluice or Flood-gate, or the Vent conveying the over-flowings of your Pond, in any Flood, that may endanger the breakings of the Ponds Dim. The depth of the Pond should be about 7 foot, except at some one end or side it be very shallow, which is necessary for the preserva-tion of the Spawn and Fry of Fish.

§ 2. Plant Willows or Alders about the Pond, and cast in some Faggots in sandy places, not far from the side, for Fish to spawn in, and defend their Spawn and young Fry from Ducks, Herons, Geese, Frogs, Kings-fishers and Vermin, especially the Spawn of Carp and Tench.

§ 3. Contrive the Pond so, as the Water may be continually renewed by some Rill or

Rain-water, which inclines Fish both to breed and feed better, and makes them be of a better and pleasanter taste: So Pools that are large, have gravelly bottoms and shallows for Fish to sport themselves on, make them purely tasted: So hollow Banks, Shelves and Roots of Trees save and preserve them from their Enemies and Devourers, and Shades defend them in the Summer from heat, and in the Winter from Cold: But many Trees growing about the Pond, is ill for Fish; because the falling and rotting of the Leaves makes the Water stink and sour, and the Fish ill-tasted.

§ 4. The Carp loves and delights in gravelly, sandy Ground and bottoms; and breed best in Marle-pits, or Pits that have clean, clay bottoms, or in new Ponds, or Ponds that are not very deep, and in such likewise that lye dry a Winter season; but not so well in old Ponds that be full of Mud and Weeds: And they would have their Ponds warm, and free from Wind, with Grafs growing on the bottom or sides, whereon, in the hot Months, they'll feed and eat, and would also have Willows grow on the sides of the Ponds. In Summer, when great droughts are, sow Hay-seeds round the sides of your Ponds, and rake the same with an Iron-rake, and Grafs will quickly grow, and when Rain replenishes the Pond, Carps will feed thereon.

Carp

Carps are very great and numerous breeders, and often over-store the Ponds where they like well, and delight, so do Breams, and that makes them both be lean, and not thrive so well.

Cleanse and drain your Ponds every four or five years, letting them lye dry six or nine Months, to kill the Water-weeds, as Water-lillies, Candocks, Reat and Bull-rushes, that breed there; and as these die, sow Oats, Parsley-seeds, and Hay-seeds, and let Grass grow on the bottom and sides of the Ponds, for Carps to feed on; and observe what kind of Fish soever either feed best, or thrive in the Water of the respective Ponds, and suit them accordingly. The Tench and Eel love and delight in Mud, and foul Waters and Ponds.

§ 5. Often feed the Fish by throwing into them chippings of Bread, Ale-grains, Curds, or the Intrails of Chickens, or of any Fowl or Beast you kill for your self: So Garden-earth and Parsley thrown into a Pond, very well recovers and refreshes sick Fish. When you store a breeding Pond, put in two or three Males for one Female; but in a feeding Pond, take no care whether there be more Male or Female Carps: Others advise to put in two Females for one Male into the breeding Pon'. If there be great store of Rubbish in a Pond, there needs a less supply of adventitious Feed.

§ 6. Carps and Tenches thrive and breed well, when no other Fish is put with them into

the same Pond ; for all other Fish devour their Spawn. Others say, that Carp, Tench and Bream will breed and like well in the same Pond ; but since Breams are such excessive breeders, I should keep them out of the Pond wherein Carp and Tench are. So likewise Roches are prodigious breeders for number, and (like Sheep in a pasture) devour and consume all the sweet Feed in Ponds, and thereby pinch and starve all other Fish.

§ 7. Pike, Pearch, Roch, Dace, Bream and Minnows, may be put into one and the same Pond ; the two first will feed on, and mightily devour the Fry and Spawn of all the others, which are numerous breeders. Breams will like very well in fair and large Ponds, or Mill-dams. Let your Pikes be all of a length you store your Ponds with ; for one of 30 inches will devour one of 15.

§ 8. In Winter break the Ice, if a great Frost, and make several holes in the Ice of your respective Fish-ponds for Fish to breathe, and take the Air at, and throw Bean-straw into the Pond, if you suspect a hard Frost to approach.

§ 9. Kill and destroy all Herons, Cormorants, Sea-gulls, Kings fishers, Water-coots, Water-rats, Water-mice, Bitterns, Wild-ducks and Otters, that frequent the Pond ; and suffer not much shooting at Wild-fowl ; for that affrightens, harms and destroys Fish. Your Tame-ducks are great Enemies to your

Fish

Fish in the Fish-ponds; for they devour all the spawn, and the young fry of Fish: The like do Geese, but not so much as Ducks.

§ 10. You may carry young Carps, or Tenches alive 40, or 60 Miles, if you lay one layr of Fish, and another of very wet Moss in a Pannier, and refresh them with fresh Water, every 10 Miles, which way is to be used for those you'll preserve alive, to store Ponds with.

§ 11. The Age of Fishes is more uncertain, than that of Terrestrial Creatures, because living under the Water they are not so easily obserued. Many of them breathe not, by which means, their Vital Spirits are more closed in; and therefore, though they receive some refrigeration by their Guills, yet that refrigeration is not so continual, as when it is by breathing.

They are free from the Desiccation, and Depredation of the Ambient Air, because they live in the Water. Yet there is no doubt, but the Water Ambient piercing and receiv'd into the Pores of their Body, doth more hurt to long life than the Air.

It is affirm'd too, that their Blood is not warm, some of them are great devourers, even of their own kind. Their Flesh is softer, more watery, and tender than that of Terrestrial Creatures.

That which they report of some Fishes, is strange; that after a certain Age their Bodies

R 4 will

will waste, and grow very slender, only their Head and Tail retaining their former greatness.

The Pike, amongst Fishes living in fresh Water, is found to last longest, sometimes to 40 Years, though others think 10 Years to be the extent of his Age; he's a Ravener, of a Flesh somewhat dry and firm. The Pike, Chub, Pearch, Trout and Eel amongst fresh Water Fish, are the greatest devourers of other Fish. The Carp, Bream, Tench, Eel, Chub, and the like, are by my Lord *Bacon* held not to live above 10 Years, yet others on their own Observations, affirm the Carp to live 30, or 40 Years. Salmons are quick of growth, short of life: But the Pearch is slow of growth, long of life. As Terrestrial Creatures cannot bear the Air that is too hot, or too close; so Fishes are suffocated in Waters, if they be totally and long frozen.

§ 12. Salmons spawn in most Rivers in *August*; then they dig a hole, or grave in a safe place in the Gravel, and there place their Eggs, or Spawn (after the Melter hath done his natural Office) and cunningly hide, and cover it over with Gravel and Stones. So leaving it to be enlivened by the Suns heat, and so they become Smelts early in the next Spring.

§ 13. In *Lorrain* in a Lake there, there's such abundance of Carps, that the present French King Yearly receives a great Revenue there-

thereby. In *Perſia* there are neither Pikes nor Eels, and in *Muscovy* no Carps are either in their Rivers, Lakes, or Ponds. In *Spain* there are no Pikes.

§ 14. All sorts of Creatures whatever have their Reductives, and Corrections, else the Universe would be over-stock'd with every particular Species : Man hath his Wars, Plagues, Famins, Foreign Plantations, Sea Voyages, Debaucheries and Excesses, which, were it not for these Mankind would grow so numerous, that the whole Earth and Sea could not produce sufficient Food, and Aliment for his nutrition ; and amongst other Creatures, Fishes are infinitely more numerous, or increasing than Beasts, or Birds, as appears by the numerous spawn of any one Fish, though ordinarily they breed but once a Year ; and if all these should come, even the Ocean it self would long since have been over stored with Fish. Now the Correctives and Reductives of these are very many. 1. Aristotle observes in his Sixth *de Historia Animalium*, cap. 13. these Eggs that are not sprinkled, *Aspergine Seminis genitalis maris*, prove unfruitful ; a great part are devoured by the Male, and much more by other Fish ; some of their Eggs are buried in the slime, and corrupted. 2. Many are taken by Men and employed for Food. 3. As among Birds and Beasts, there are Birds and Beasts of Prey, so especially amongst Fish : And though the Wisdom of Providence hath given

given certain Expedients to Animals, especially Fishes of the weaker Nature, to escape the voracious, as swiftness to some, smallness to others, whereby they escape to shallows, and shoars unaccesable to the greater: And to those that are not able to move, or at least to move swiftly, the Protection of Shells, as Oysters, Escallopss, Crabs, Lobsters, and other Shell-fish, yet a very great number are devoured by the voracious kind.

My Lord Chief Justice *Hales* tells us in his *Moral Evidences*, that a Friend of his, having stored a very great Pond of 3, or 4 Acres of Ground with Carps, Tench and other Pond-fish, of a very great number, only put in 2 very little small Pikes; at 7 Years end upon the draught of his Pond, not one Fish was left, but the 2 Pikes grown to an excessive bigness, and all the rest, together with their Millions of Fry, devoured by those pair of Tyrants. 4 Beasts also and Birds of Prey, as Otters, Water-Rats, Bitterns, Herons, Ducks, Geese, Kings-fishers, Sea-gulls, Cormorants and other Fowl of that kind, destroy many both in Sea, Rivers, Ponds and Lakes. 5. Extream Frosts, especially in Rivers, Ponds and Lakes make a great destruction of Fish, partly by freezing them, partly by the exclusion of the Ambient Air, which insinuates it self into the Water, and is necessary for the preservation of the lives of those watery Inhabitants. 6. By great heats and droughts, not only drying up Lakes,

Lakes, Ponds and Rivers, but also tainting the Water with excessive heat, and though those two do not so much concern Sea-fish, who have more scope and room, yet they have a great influx upon Rivers, Ponds and Lakes

§ 15. *Janus Dubravinius* says, Carps begin to spawn at the Age of 3 Years, and continue to do so 'till 30, both they and most other Fish spawn in the Spring, or Summer, except Trout, Carps, Loaches, and Gudgeons spawn several times in the Summer, and then 3 or 4 Male Carps will follow a Female, but she dissembling a Coyness, they force her through Weeds and Flags, where she lets fall her Eggs or Spawn, which sticks fast to the Weeds, and then they let fall their melt upon it, and so it becomes in a short time a living Fish; and it's thought that most Fish breed after this manner, except the Eel. And when the Spawner hath weakened her self by doing that Natural Office, 2 or three melters have helped her off from the Weeds, by bearing her up on both sides, and guarding her into the deep.

C H A P. XXXIX.

*The manner, and chief ways of
dressing fresh Water Fish.*

Although I cannot pretend to the least Skill in Cookery; yet I will not deny, but that (as the times phrase it) I understand something of eating, and very well know that the Angler when from home, and would pleasure his Friends with the fruit of his recreations, frequently meets with such ill Huswives at ordinary Inns, or Alehouses (being often enforced to take up his Quarters at such places, for the conveniences of the River he Angles at) as renders by their ill dressing the most delicate Fish, not only ingrateful to the Palate, but even nauseous to the Stomach; to obviate which inconvenience, I will here furnish the Angler (out of Mr. Walton, Ingenious Mr. Cotton, and others) with the easiest, and best ways of dressing all manner of fresh Water Fish, so that upon such stress, he may direct his Land-lady so well, (if she'll but observe him) as neither to shame her self, nor spoil a good dish of Fish. And, I will first teach how to dress the Chub, he being a Fish that has lost much Reputation, for want of good dressing.

How to dress a Chub.

§ 1. First scale him, and then wash him clean, and take out his Guills; and to that end make the hole as little, and near to his Guills as you may conveniently, and especially make clean his Throat from Grass and Weeds that are usually in it, (for if that be not very clean, it will make him to tast very sour) then with your Knife cut away all his Guills, having so done, put some sweet Herbs (which are the tops of Rosemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parsly and Winter Savory) into his Belly, and then tye him with 2 or 3 splinters to a Spit, and rost him, basted often with Vinegar, or rather Verjuice and Butter, with good store of Salt mixt with it. This way makes him a good dish of Meat, and dries up the fluid watery humour, with which all Chubs abound. Other Fish may be dreſt thus, as Barbel, Tench, Bream, &c. only bast them with Butter only, and Salt firt ſtrewed on.

Another way to dress a Chub.

§ 2. When you have scaled a Chub, and cut off his Tail, Fins and Guills, and washed him very clean and taken out the Guts, &c. then chine or slit him through the middle, as a Salt-fish is usually cut, then give him 3,
or

or 4 cuts, or scotches on the Back with your Knife, and broil him leisurely on clear Charcoal, or Wood-coal Fire that are free from smoak, and all the time he is broyling, baste him with the best sweet Butter, and good store of Salt mixt with it, and to this add a little Thyme cut exceeding small, or bruised into the Butter; and he's often to be turn'd whilst he's broiling. Drest in this manner the watry tast is taken away, for which many except against him. He's to be eaten the same Day he's caught, and forget not to cut his Guills, and wash his Throat very clean; and his Body is not to be washed after gutted, (as indeed no other Fish should be) but wiped clean with a Linnen Cloth. After this manner you may dress other Fish, as Trouts, Barbel's and Tenches, &c.

Another way to dress a Chub.

§ 3. Set a Kettle over the fire with some Water, and a little Beer Vinegar, so much of both as will cover the Fish, and therein put Fennel and good store of Salt; and when the Water boils put in the Chub, (he being first scaled, gutted, Throat made clean, and wiped clean, and Guills cut away) and let him boil up but afterwards very leisurely, and when boil'd enough, take him out, and lay him on a Board for the Water to run from him; having so rested one Hour, pick all

all the Fish from the Bones, and lay it on a Pewter dish, which set on a Chafing dish of Coals, and put good store of Butter to it, which when the Fish is exceeding hot, serve it up, and eat it as minced Veal, and scald some Parsly, and shred it and mix it with the Fish.

To dress Trouts, &c. the common way.

§ 4. First with a Knife gently scrape all the slime off them, then wash them clean in Salt and Water, and cut away all their Guills, then gut them, and wipe them very clean with a Linnen Cloth, then flower them on one side with the finest Wheat flower, then lay them in the Frying-pan, with that side downwards which was flowered, and fry them very well, but leisurely in good sweet Butter, until they be brown and crisp; then flower that side which is uppermost, and turn it downwards, and fry as aforesaid, &c. then take them out of the Frying-pan, and lay them on a Pewter dish, first very well heated before the fire; then pour off the Butter the Trout were fry'd in, into the Grease-pot, and not on the Fish; then fry good store of Parsly and young Sage in other sweet Butter, until they be a little crisp, then take out the Herbs and lay them on the Fish, but put not any of the Butter wherein the Herbs were fry'd, on the Fish: Then beat up some sweet Butter, with

with 3 or 4 Spoonfuls of boylng hot Spring Water (an Anchovis being first therein dissolved, if you can easily have an Anchovis) and pour it on the Fish, or Dish where they are, and serve them up, garnishing your dish with some Straw-berries, or other Green Leaves. This is the way to fry Trout, Salmon Smelts under a foot long, small Pikes, Pearches, Graylings, Roches, Daces, Breams, Gudgeons, only those that have scales are to be clean scaled, which must be done very lightly and carefully with a Knife for bruising the Fish, and those that have no scales must be well washed, and rubbed in Salt and Water before they are gutted, and the Guills of every Fish is to be cut clean out, and of the Fish before gutted; for the Guills easily contract an ill favour, tast and smell. This way also you may fry small Eels, after they are flead, gutted, wiped clean, and cut into pieces 4 or 5 inches long.

The best way of dressing a Trout, &c.

§ 5. Take your Trout, wash, and dry him with a clean Napkin; then open him, and having taken out his Guts, and all the Blood, and cut and taken away his Guills, wipe him very clean within, but wash him hot, and give him three scotches with the Knife to the Bone, on one side only; after which take a clean Kettle, and put in as much hard stale Beer

Beer Vinegar, (but it must not be dead Vinegar) and a little White-wine and Water, as will cover the Fish you intend to boil; then throw into the Liquor a good quantity of Salt, the Rind of a Limon, a Handful of slic'd Horse-Radish-Root, with a handsome little faggot of Rosemary, Thyme, sweet Marjoram, Parsley, and Winter Savory. Then set your Kettle upon a quick fire of Wood, and let your Liquor boil up to the height before you put in your Fish, and then, if there be many, put them in one by one, that they may not so cool the Liquor, as to make it fall, and whilst your Fish is boiling, beat up the Butter for your Sauce with a Ladleful or two of the Liquor it is boiling in, (one Anchovy being dissolv'd in the Liquor if you have Anchovis) and being boil'd enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fish, and being laid in a Pewter Dish (first well warm'd before the fire) pour your Butter upon it, and strewing it plentifully over with shaved Horse-Radish-root, and a little pounded Ginger; Garnish the sides of your Dish, and the Fish it self with a slic'd Limon or two, and serve it up. Most omit the Anchovis in the Sauce. In the same manner you may dress a Salmon Mort; likewise a Grayling, Carp, Bream, Roch, Dace may be dress'd after the same manner, only they are to be scaled, which a Trout never is, and that must be done very lightly and carefully, with a Knife, for bruising the

Fish: also a Pike may be thus drest, the slime being first well scoured off with Water and Salt; so likewise may a Pearch and Tench be drest, but before you pour on the Sauce, blanch off very neatly the Skins of the Pearch and Tench. For want of Horse-Radish Root, use slic'd Ginger and some grossly bruised Pepper, or rather long Pepper, which is good for to boil Fish with.

To Dress Salmon.

§ 6. You may fry pieces of Salmon, or a Chine of Salmon, as you are directed for the Trout, at § 4. of this Chapter.

To Stew Salmon, or other Fish.

§ 7. Take a Salmon, draw it, &c. scotch the Back, put it whole, or in pieces, into a Stew-pan, and thereunto put some Beer-Vinegar, White-wine and Water, as much as will cover the Fish, put also to it some whole Cloves, large Mace, slic'd Nutmeg, slic'd Ginger, a Bay-leaf, a bundle of the tops of Rosemary, stripp'd Thyme, sweet Marjoram, Winter-savory, and pick'd Parsley, some whole Pepper, Currans, Salt, Butter, and an Orange in halves, stew all leisurely together, and, when well stewed, dish them with carved Sippets, lay on the Spices, and slic'd Limon, run it over with Butter beaten up in some of the Li-

quor

quor it was stewed in, garnish the Dish with
searfed Manchet, &c. Thus you may stew
any other Fish, as Carp, Pike, Bream,
Pearch, &c.

The best way to Dress a Carp, &c.

§ 8. Take a Carp, (alive, if possible) scour
him, and rub him clean with Water and Salt,
but scale him not, say some, others scale him,
then open him, and put him with his Blood
and his Liver (which you must save when
you open him) into a small Pot or Kettle, then
take sweet Marjoram, Thyme and Parsley,
of each half a Handful, a sprig of Rosemary,
and another of Savory, bind them into 2 or 3
small bundles, and put them to your Carp,
with 4 or 5 whole Onions, 20 pickled Oylters,
and 3 Anchovies. Then pour upon your Carp
as much Claret-wine as will cover him, and
season your Claret well with Salt, Cloves,
Mace, sic'd Nutmegs, and the rinds of Oran-
ges and Limons; that done, cover your Pot,
and set it over a quick Fire, till it be sufficient-
ly boiled; then take out the Carp, and lay it
with the Broth in the Dish, and pour upon it a
quarter of a Pound of the best fresh Butter
melted and beaten, with 6 spoonfuls of the
Broth, the Yolks of 2 or 3 Eggs, and some of
the Herbs shred; garnish your Dish with Li-
mons, and so serve it up, and you'll find it a no-
ble Dish thus drest. But if you be not willing to

be at the charges of the Claret wine, and for want of that, some White-wine, good Beer-vinegar and Water may serve very well instead of the Claret-wine. And if you cannot have the Oysters and Anchovis, and thereby are enforc'd to omit them, it will notwithstanding such omission, eat well. In the same manner, you may dress other Fish, only you must for others, omit the Blood and Liver: As Salmon, Pike, Trout, Pearch, Bream, Grayling, &c. those that have Scales, being sca'd, and if you use Wine only, put in the Fish before the Liquor boils, otherwise afterwards.

The common way of boiling Fish.

§ 9. The common way of boiling Fish, is to draw them, cut out their Guills, and scale them, if Scales, and wipe them clean, and then to set over the Fire a Kettle, with as much Water as will cover the Fish, and to put therein some Beer-vinegar, good store of Salt, sweet Fennel, a bundle or two of sweet Herbs, and when the Liquor boils very well up, to put in the Fish, but then let it boil very leisurely, until the Fish be perfectly boil'd; then let the Water run off, and lay them on a hot Pewter Dish, and set it on a Chafing-dish of Coals, and when all the Water is perfectly run from the Fish, then serve them up with beaten Butter, some Parsley
boil'd

boil'd by it self, then shred and mingled with the beaten Butter ; let the Parsley not be too much boil'd, but greenish. The putting in Vinegar into the Water you boil Fish in, causes the Fish to harden, and so does Wine.

How to Fry Eels.

§ 10. First take the Eel, flea him, gut him, and wash him clean, then cut him into the lengths of 3 or 4 inches a-piece, then set over Water in a Skillet or Posnet, and let it boil, and therein you must put good store of Salt, and some Fennel, when this Water boils, put in the pieces of Eel, and let them therein be almost half boiled, then take them out, putting them into a Cullender, then, after the Water is well drained, flour them with the finest Wheat-flower, and fry them as you are instructed to fry a Trout, at § 4. of this Chapter. This is a curious way for frying large pieces of Eel, and they will be very tender.

The best way of dressing a large Eel.

§ 11. First wash him in Water and Salt, then pull off his Skin below his Vent or Navel, and not much further ; having done that, take out his guts as clean as you can, but wash him not, then give him three or four scotches with a Knife, and then put into his Belly and those scotches, sweet Herbs, (which are the

tops of Rosemary, sweet Marjoram, Winter-savory, stripp'd Thyme, and pick'd Parsley) an Anchovy, and a little Nutmeg grated, or cut very small, and your Herbs and Anchovies must also be cut very small, and mixt with good Butter and Salt ; having done this, then pull his Skin over him all but his Head, which you are to cut off, to the end you may tie his Skin about that part where his Head grew, and it must be so tied as to keep all his moisture within his Skin ; and having done this, tie him with Tape or Pack-thread to a Spit, and Rost him leisurely, and baste him with Water and Salt, till his Skin breaks, and then with Butter ; and having Rosted him enough, let what was put into his Belly, be mixed with beaten Butter for his Sawce.

The common way of Rosting Eels.

§ 12. Take Eels, flea, gut, and wipe them clean, and cut them in pieces 4 or 5 Inches long, put them on a small Spit cross-ways, and between each piece, put some large Sage-leaves, or Bay-leaves ; then rost them, and baste them with Butter, and, when enough, serve them up with Butter, beaten up in 3 or 4 Spoonfuls of boiling Water, and the Yolk of an Egg beaten in the Butter likewise, if you like Eggs. If you put the pieces of Eel in boiling Water and Salt, before you rost them, and let them be a quarter boil'd, and then

then roast them, they'll eat far better. Your Eels that are roasted, should be pretty large.

Whether you thus roast, fry or broil Eels, par-boil them in Water, Salt, and some Fennel.

Spitch-cock, or Broiled Eels.

S 13. Take a large Eel, split it down the Back, and joyn the Bone; being drawn, and the Blood wash'd out, leave on the Skin, and cut it in 4 pieces equally, salt them, and broil them on a soft, clear Fire, free from Smoke, and baste them with Butter, and being enough, and finely broil'd, serve them on a clean Dish, with beaten Butter, or instead of Butter, you may baste them with pure sweet Sallet Oil and Vinegar, and often in broiling, turn them.

Stewed Eels.

§ 14. Flay them, draw them, and wipē them clean, and cut them in pieces 3 or 4 inches long, and put them into a Posnet or Skillet, with fair Water, a little White-wine, Verjdice, or, instead thereof, Beer-vinegar, as much altogether as will well cover them, Butter, some large Mace, Cloves, Pepper, sic'd Nutmeg, almost half a Pound of Cur-rans, Salt, two or three Onions, three or four Spoonfuls of Yeast or Batm, and a bundle of sweet Herbs, viz. Stripp'd Thyme, sweet Mar-

joram, Witer-savory, Parsley, and one or two tops of Rosemary. Stew all these together leisurely, till the Fish be very tender, then Dish them, and put to the Broth a quarter of a pound of Butter, pour it on the Fish, Sippet it, and serve it up.

Or you may stew them in an Oven, cutting them in pieces, and setting them on the end, being first season'd with Pepper, Salt, Cloves and Nutmeg, and cast in Currans amongst them, and at the top of all, lay good store of Butter, and some Sage-leaves, and put in four or five spoonfuls of White-wine, and so bake them, and serve them on Sippets; instead of White-wine, you may put three or four spoonfuls of Water, but it's not so good. You are to put them in a good glazed, Earthen Pot for this way. And you may stew them thus without putting any other season to them, but a very little Salt, and good store of Butter and Sage-leaves at top.

How to make an Eel Pye.

§ 15. First flay, gut, draw and wipe the Eel very clean, both inside and outside, with a Napkin; then cut the Eel into pieces 3 or 4 inches long, then take Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg all powder'd, and Pepper powder'd, but not so small as the other Spices; mix all the Spices together with Salt, then season the pieces of your Eel all over on each side, and end very
hightly

highly with the Spices and Salt. Then take fine Wheat-flower, and to every quart of Flower you use, boil three Ounces of good Butter in fair Spring Water, and make the Paste for your Pye speedily and quick therewith: Your Pye should either be round, or long like a Brick, but round at the ends. Then lay the pieces of Eel in your Pye, with store of the best Currans (first well washed in Spring-water, and Cullender'd;) at top of all lay great store of Butter, and cover it with the Lid, in which (if the Pye be to be eaten hot) make a hole, and pour therein 6 or 8 Spoonfuls of White-wine immediately before you set it in the Oven, then set it in the Oven, and let it be very well baked and soaked. Let your Crust for the Pye be well made; for if either it drench, or run in the Oven, it will be worth very little. And if the Pye be to be eaten cold, it should be eaten within 2 Days after baking, else it dries, and is not so good. Instead of the White-wine, you may put in 3, or 4 Spoonfuls of Water, but it's not so good as the Wine by much, though it will do well.

Some put boiling hot White-wine, and a little grated Nutmeg into the Pye, a little before it's drawn out of the Oven, and at setting into the Oven only a little fair Spring-water. You must not put any Wine in, if you intend to keep it, but Butter only.

To Collar Eels to be eat cold.

§ 16. Take large Eels, flay, draw and wipe them clean with a Linnen Cloth, part them down the Back, and take out the Bone, then take Thyme, Parsley, sweet Marjoram, a little Winter-savory, and a few of the tops of Rosemary; mince them all small, and mingle them with Nutmeg, Cloves, Ginger, Pepper, all beaten into Powder, and Salt; then strew them on the inside of the Eels; then rowl up the Eels like a Collar of Brawn, and put them in a clean Linnen Cloth tied at both ends, and bound close with Pack-thread, and boil them in Water, some Beer-Vinegar, and Salt, until they be very tender and enough: But let the Liquor boil before you put in the Eels; when boil'd enongh, take them out of the Liquor, and let them and the Liquor be cold, and then put them in the same Liquor again, and you may therein keep them 5 or 6 days, or more; and you may serve it either in Collars, or in round slices with Saucers of Vinegar.

But if you'll have the collar'd Eel to keep a Month, or more, put no Herbs to it, nor into the Liquor it's boil'd in, but very highly season the Eels only with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt, without any Herbs amongst them; then proceed as before, &c. boil the Pickle they are kept in every 14 days,

14 days, and if it waste, add Water and Vinegar to it at the boiling.

*How to Fry Pikes, or Jacks, not above
15 Inches longs.*

§ 17. Let them first be fry'd, as at § 4. of this Chapter, brown and crisp, being fry'd, drain all the Butter from them, and wipe the Pan very clean; then put them again into the Pan with Nutmeg and Ginger slic'd, an Anchovy, Salt, and Claret-wine; fry them till half be consumed, then put in a piece of Butter, shake them well together with a minced Limon, or slic'd Orange, and dish it, garnish with Limon or slic'd Orange, and rub the Dish with Shalot. You may fry other Fish thus, if you like the way.

To dress a Pike, by Boiling it, &c.

§ 18. Take a large Pike, rub off all his Slime with Water and Salt, cut away his Guills, and Fins; then gut and draw him, and cast away his Blood, then put 3 parts Water, and 1 White-wine, and a Pint of Beer-vinegar, as much of all as will cover him, into a clean scoured Kettle, with a Handful of Salt, Cloves, and large Mace, of each two Drams, two slic'd Nutmegs, one Limon-peel, four races of Ginger par'd and slic'd, two Drams of whole Pepper, four or five great Onions

Onions whole, then make a Faggot of sweet Herbs, *viz.* 6 tops of Rosemary, Sweet Marjoram, Thyme, Winter Savory, and Parsley, of each as much, all bound up together, put them with the Spices and Salt into the Kettle, and make them boil a-pace upon a quick and strong fire, and when it boils at the height then put in the Fish, but afterwards let it boil very leisurely; being well boiled, drain the Liquor from it, and lay it on a large Dish, lay on the Herbs and Spices on the Fish, with sliced Limons and Limon-peels, beat up good store of Butter in a Ladleful, or two of boiling Liquor the Fish was boiled in; Sippet it, and garnish the Dish with searfed Manchet.

Or, make Sauce with Butter beaten thick with slices of Limon, and some of the Liquor the Fish was boiled in, an Anchovy or two first dissolved therein, and garnish the Dish with beaten Ginger.

Or, For Sauce, take 3 or 4 Anchovis, dissolve them in White-wine, put them in a Pipkin with some slic'd Horse-radish-root, gross Pepper, some of the Liquor the Fish was boiled in, some pickled Oysters and their Liquor, large Mace, one Onion, or two, the Sauce being well stewed, dissolve and beat in the Sauce 2 or 3 yolks of Eggs, pour it on the Fish with some beaten Butter, the stewed Oysters and slic'd Limon.

Or, Put some of the Liquor wherein the Fish

Fish was boiled, with 2 or 3 Anchovis cleansed and minced, a little White-wine, some grated Nutmeg, and stew it on a Chafing-dish, and beat it up thick with some sweet Butter, the yolk of an Egg or 2 dissolved with some Vinegar, give it a walm, and put to it 3 or 4 slices of Limon ; pour on the Sauce, and garnish the Fish with slic'd Limons, the Spices, Herbs and boiled Onions.

Note, that you may dress a Salmon, great Trout, or Carp after the same manner, only for the Carp add his Blood and Liver, to the Liquor he's boil'd in.

Note also, that you may boil several Fish in the same Liquor the first was boiled in, and it will be stronger and better, what is wanting for the second, being replenished with Water, Wine and Vinegar.

How to roſt a Pike.

§ 19. First open your Pike at the Guills, and if need be, cut also a little slit towards the Belly, out of these take his Guts and keep his Liver, which you are to shred very small with Thyme, sweet Marjoram, Parsley, and a little Winter Savory ; to these put some pickled Oysters, and some Anchovis, two or three, both these last whole (for the Anchovis will melt, and the Oysters should not) to these you must add also a Pound of sweet Butter, which you are to mix with the Herbs

Herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted; (if the Pike be more than a yard long, then you may put into these Herbs more than a Pound of Butter, or if he be less, then less Butter will suffice) these being thus mixt, with a blade or two of Mace, must be put into the Pike's Belly, and then his Belly so fowed up, as to keep all the Butter in his Belly, if it be possible, if not, then as much of it as you possibly can, but take not off the Scales; then you are to thrust the Spit through his Mouth, and out at his Tail, and then take 4, 5 or 6 split Sticks, or very thin Laths, and a convenient quantity of Tape or Filletting; these Laths are to be tied round about the Pike's Body, from his Head to his Tail, and the Tape tied somewhat thick, to prevent his breaking, or falling off from the Spit; let him be rosted very leisurely, and often basted with Claret-wine, and Anchovies, and Butter mixt together, and also with what moisture falls from him into the Pan: When you have rosted him sufficiently, you are to hold under him (when you unwind or cut the Tape that ties him) such a Dish as you purpose to eat him out of, and let him fall into it with the Sauce that is rosted in his Belly, and by this means the Pike will be kept unbroken, and compleat. Then to the Sauce that was within, (and also that Sauce in the Pan) you are to add a fit quantity of the best Butter, and therein to squeeze

squeeze the Juice of 3 or 4 Oranges. Lastly, you may either put into the Pike with the Oysters, 2 Cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out, when the Pike is cut off the Spit, or to give the Sauce a Hogo, (let the Dish into which you let the Pike fall) be rubbed with it: The using, or not using of this Garlick is left to your Discretion; because it is offensive to some.

*To Stem Carp, Bream, Mullet, or River
large Rock, or Dace.*

§ 20. Scale, cut out the Guills, wash them clean, and wipe them dry with a clean Linen Cloth, flower and fry them in good sweet Butter, as before at § 4. of this Chap. being finely fry'd, put them in a Pewter-Dish with half a Pint of Claret-wine, grated Nutmeg, a blade or two of large Mace, an Anchovy shred, Salt, a little slic'd Ginger, 3 or 4 Cloves, some Butter, 3 or 4 slices of an Orange, set it on a Chafing-dish of Coals, (the Liquor being at boiling before you put in the Fish) then cover it close, and stew it up quick, and turn it; being stewed, dish it on fine carved Sippets, beat up Butter for the Sauce, with the Liquor the Fish was stewed in, and run it over therewith, laying on the Spices and slices of a fresh Orange; garnish the Dish with dry Manchet, grated and searfed.

To Roast a Carp, Bream, Chub, or Tench.

§ 21. Take a Carp alive, guill, draw, wash it, and let the Scales be on, and take away the Gall and Milt, or Spawn, then make a Pudding with some grated Manchet, Almond Paste, Cream, Currans, grated Nutmeg, raw Yoiks of Eggs, candy'd Limon-Peel, or any Peel, some Limon and Salt; make the Pudding stiff, and put it through the Guills into the Belly of the Fish, but fill it not too full, then roast it in the Oven on 2 or 3 Sticks laid crofs a Brads Dish, turn it, and let the Gravy drop into the Dish; being finely rosted, make Sauce with the Gravy, Juice of Orange or Limon, and some Cinnamon; beat all up thick with Butter, and dish it, putting the Sauce over it, with slices of Limon.

To Broil a Carp, &c. with Sallet Oil.

§ 22. Take a live Carp, guill it, draw it, and scrape off the slime, and wipe it dry with a clean Linnen Cloth, both inside and outside, and lay it in a Dish with Vinegar, Claret-wine, pure good Sallet Oil, Salt, and some straight sprigs of Rosemary, sweet Marjoram, Thyme and Parsley, some flic'd Ginger, Pepper grossly bruised, a few Cloves, and a little

little large Mace; let it steep there for about 2 Hours, then gently broil it on a clean Gridiron, laid on a clear soft fire, and turn it often, and baste it very often with the Liquor it was steeped in, and the Herbs. The Fish being well broiled, serve it on a clean dish with the Liquor, Herbs and Spices it was steeped in, the same being first well boiled up together; with or without pickled Oyster Liquor, lay the Spices on the Fish, and Herbs about the dish, and run it over either with Butter beaten up with the juices of Oranges, or Lemons; or, else with pure good and sweet Sallet Oyl. Broil the Milt, or Spawn by it self and lay it on the Carp.

Or, You may make a Sauce with pickled Oyster Liquor, White-wine, grated Nutmeg, juice of Oranges, and a little Wine Vinegar all well boild together, beating up Butter therewith, and with the yolk of an Egg, and serve up the Fish therewith.

In the same manner you may dress Pike, Mullet, Roch, Dace, or Bream; only use not their Blood, Milt, or Spawn, and you may broil them either with their scales on or off: And in the same manner you may broil a Jole, Rand, Chine, or Slices of Salmon. In the same manner dress a Conger, cut in pieces and flead. And, note that you may chine, or slit the Carp, &c. through the middle, as a Salt-fish is usually cut, then give him 3, or 4 scotches on the Back with your Knife, and

T then

then proceed to your broiling, &c. Some before they broil a Conger thus, first very well par-boil it in Water with store of Salt and sweet Herbs, and then steep the pieces in the Liquor, &c. aforesaid, and then broil it, &c.

To broil a Conger, or bake it.

§ 23. Flay it, draw it, and cut it in pieces, and wipe them clean, then par-boil very well the pieces of Conger in Water, with good store of Salt, and sweet Herbs, which are Parsley, Sweet Marjoram, Winter Savory, Rosemary, and Thyme; then lay the pieces of Conger on a clean Grid-iron, laid over a clear soft fire, turn the pieces often, basting them with Butter, wherein are tops of Rosemary, stripped Thyme, pickled Parsley, and Sweet Marjoram shred, and mingled therewith; when broiled enough, serve them with Butter beat up in 4 or 5 Spoonfuls of boiling hot Spring Water, (which keeps the Butter from becoming Oily and being Nauseous) and the yolk of an Egg being also beaten therewith.

You may also bake a Conger, as before you are directed for an Eel, at § 15. but let the pieces before you season them, be well par-boiled in Water, Salt, and sweet Herbs, and when you season them let them be very highly seasoned. In the like manner you may bake them, in a well glazed Earthen-pot, the inside and bottom

tom being first well dawbed with Butter.

How to bake a Lamprey.

§ 24. Flay it, draw it, and split the Back on the inside, from the Mouth to the end of the Tail, be sure you take out the String in the Back, and truss her round ; par-boil it well in Water with store of Salt and sweet Herbs ; then season it, when cold, with Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt, put some Butter in the bottom of the Pye, and lay on the Lamprey with 2, or 3 great Onions, a few whole Cloves, Currans and store of Butter ; close it up and bake it, and being well soaked and baked, fill it up with clarified Butter, stop it up with Butter in the vent hole, and you may first put in it some boiling Claret-wine, but then it will not keep long, nor if you put Currans in it.

You may bake either large Eel, Conger, or Lamprey, in a well glaz'd round Earthen-pot instead of a Crust ; but rub on the inside and bottom thereof, great store of Butter, and season the Fish, if to keep long, only with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt, and that pretty highly.

Let me here insert, though improperly, rather than forget to tell you, That if at any time you boil Fish, and put only good store of Fennel and Salt in the Water the Fish is

boiled in, and about a Pint of Beer Vinegar, or rather half a Pint, that you need not put your self to the charges of Wine, to put in the Liquor you boil the Fish in, except it be on some extraordinary Occasion; and put no more Water in than will cover the Fish, and let the Liquor boil well up before you put in the Fish; but after the Fish is put into the boiling Liquor, then let the Liquor boil very leisurely, and simmeringly only, else the Fish will be apt to break and fall in pieces, and not be so truly boiled.

*To make excellent French Bread to eat
Fish with.*

§ 25. Take a Gallon of fine Wheat-flower, and a Pint of good new Ale-Barm, or Yeast, and put the Flower with the whites of 6 new laid Eggs well beaten in a dish, and mix with the Barm in the middle of the Flower, and also one Spoonful of fine Salt; then warm some Milk and fair Water, and put to it, and make it up pretty stiff, being well wrought and worked up, cover it in a Bowl, or Tray, with a warm Cloth till your Oven be hot, then make it up either in Rolls, or Fashion it in little Wooden-dishes, and bake it about an Hour in a quick Oven, and chip it hot. This is the very best way of making French Bread.

To sonce a Carp, Pike, Bream, Tench,
Trout, &c.

§ 26. Draw your Fish, but scale it not, and save the Liver of it, wash it very well; then take one part of White-wine, and four parts of Water, boil them together with some whole Spice, as Cloves, Mace, sliced Nutmeg, Salt and a bundle of sweet Herbs, and when it boils put in your Fish, and just before it some Vinegar, for that will make it crisp; when the Fish is enough, take it up, and put it into a Tray, then put into the Liquor some whole long Pepper and races of bruised Ginger, and let the Liquor boil, still, till it be enough, then take it off and let it cool, and when it's quite cold put in your Fish again, and therein keep it; but if to keep above 4, or 5 Days, you must not put in any of the sweet Herbs, but omit them, because they will quickly cause it sour; and when you serve it, have some Saucers of Vinegar and Fennel. For ordinary use, you may omit the Wine, Cloves, Mace and Nutmeg; and only use Water, Vinegar, long Pepper, Ginger and Salt.

To stew Trout, or other Fish.

§ 27. Put two Trout into a fair dish with some White-wine, sweet Butter, a little whole

Mace, and some sliced Nutmeg, a little Parsley, Thyme and Savory minced, then put in an Anchovy, and the Yolks of hard Eggs; when your Fish is enough stewed on a Chafing-dish of Coals, betwixt two Pewter-dishes, serve it on Sippets, and pour the Liquor over it; and you may add Capers to it, if you please. Garnish with Limon and Barberries. Note, the first thing you are to do, is to gut, draw, guill and wipe the Fish, both inside and outside clean, with a clean Linnen Cloth, and then proceed as above.

To stew Carps in their own Blood.

§ 28. Take two fair Carps, and scour them very well from slime, with Water and Salt, then lay them in a dish, and open their Bellies, and take away their Guts and Guills, and save the Blood and Rows in the Dish, then put in a Pint of Claret-wine, some whole Spice (which is Cloves, Mace and sliced Nutmeg) and some Salt, with a little sliced Horse-radish-root; then cover them close, and let them stew over a Chafing-dish of Coals, and when they are enough, lay them in a warm dish rubbed with a Shalot, and Sippets laid in, then take a little of the Liquor, and therein dissolve an Anchovy or two, and beat up Butter therewith, and pour it on the Fish, and serve it hot. Garnish with Capers, Oranges, or Limons sliced.

To boil fresh Salmon, &c.

§ 29. Take a Joll, or a Tail of fresh Salmon, then take Water, Salt, Vinegar, whole Spice, and Fennel, and boil them together, and when it boils put in your Fish, and when it is boiled, take some of the Liquor, an Anchovy or two, and a little White-wine; boil these together, and beat therein some Butter, and so dish your Fish, and pour this over it; Garnishing with Anchovis, or slices of Limon.

To stew Fish in the Oven.

§ 30. Take Soals, Whittings, or Flounders, and put them into a Stew-pan, with so much Water as will cover them, with a little Spice, Salt, White or Claret-wine, some Butter, two Anchovis, and a bundle of sweet Herbs; cover them, and set them into an Oven not too hot; when they are enough, serve them in, laying in Sippes. Garnish with Green Leaves, &c.

To make a Sallad with fresh Salmon.

§ 31. Your Salmon being boiled and souced, mince some of it small with Apples and Onions, put thereto pure Sallet Oyl, Vinegar and Pepper, so serve it; Garnishing with Limons and Capers. A Salt white Herring thus drest,

is called a Pickled Herring, but the Herring is not to be boiled, but the Fish only pick'd from the Bones. In the same manner you may dress cold Turkey, or Capon, that is either boiled or rosted before.

To make a Carp, or Trout Pye.

§ 32. Take a Carp, and scale him, gut him, guill him, wash him clean, and dry him with a clean Linnen Cloth both infide and outside, then lay Butter in your Pye, and lay him therein with some whole Cloves, Mace, and sliced Nutmeg, with 2 handfuls of Capers, and Currans washed clean, and cullender'd; then mix some Butter with Salt, and lay it oyer, then close it, and at the vent hole in the middle, put in some White-wine immediately before it's set in the Oven, then bake it. This is good hot or cold.

To make an Eel Pye.

§ 33. Take the largest Eels, flay them, gut them, and cut them in pieces 3 or 4 inches long, having your Pye ready with Butter in the bottom, season your Eel with Pepper, Nutmeg, Mace, and Salt, then lay them in with good store of Currans, well wash'd and cullender'd, and cover them with Butter; so close it and bake it.

To make a Fricasie of Eels.

§ 34. Take a midling sort of Eels, scour them well, and cut off the Heads and throw them away, then gut them, and cut them into pieces about 3 inches long; then put them into a Frying-pan, with so much White-wine and Water as will cover them, then put in whole Spice, as Cloves, Mace, Slic'd Nutmeg, and Pepper, a bundle of sweet Herbs, and some Salt; then let them boil well, and when they be very tender, take them up, and lay them in a warm dish, then add to their Liquour 2 Anchovis, some Yolks of Eggs, and Butter, all well beat together, and pour over them, and serve them, &c.

To dress Neats-Tongues to carry with you.

§ 35. Take to every Pound of Salt you use finely beaten, one Ounce and half of Salt-peter, mix them, and rub your Tongues very well therewith, and cover them all over therewith, and as it wafts put on more; when they are hard and stiff they are enough; then rowl them in Bran, and dry them before a soft Fire, or hang them in the Chimney-corner; before you boil them lay them in Pump-water one Night, then boil them in Pump-water: The Salt-peter gives them the Red colour.

Observations on dressing of Fish.

§ 1. When you dress any Fish that have Scales on them, they are first to be scal'd, and that must be done very lightly and carefully with a Knife, for fear of bruising the Fish; then they are to be well washed in Salt and Water all the Slime off, then the Guills and Fins are to be cut away, then open their Bellies, and take out all their Guts, &c. very clean, then rub and wipe them very clean both inside and outside with a Linuen Cloth; then (if to fry) Flower them, &c. as at Sect. 4. ante.

§ 2. If your Fish have no Scales, then you must proceed as before, only the scaling cannot be done.

§ 3. If the Fish are to be boiled, the wiping with Linuen Cloath may be omitted, but after they are gutted and the Guills and Fins cut away, and scaled, if Scales be on them, let them be washed and rub'd with Water and Salt, and then to be boil'd, &c.

§ 4. When any Fish is to be boil'd, put it not into the Liquor before it has boil'd to the heighth for half a quarter of an Hour, and put it in when it boils, but after it hath been in the boiling Liquor, then let it boil very leisurely till enough. Whether you roast, fry, broil, boil, bake or stew your Fish, let it be done thoroughly and enough, though leisurely. For if short baked, roasted, boiled, fryed, broiled

broiled or stewed, your Fish is spoil'd, and becomes both very unwholesom and unpleasant Meat.

§ 5. The broiling of Fish is a very excellent way, and you are first to give the Fish a scotch or two on the back (after they are scaled, if Scales, Guills and Fins cut away, gutted and wiped clean, or washed clean in Water and Salt) and then to strew some Salt on the Fish, and lay it on a Grid-iron laid upon a soft and clear Fire, free from Smoke; you are to turn them, and baste them with Butter, and they are to broil very leisurely, and to be often turn'd.

§ 6. There are accounted sweet Herbs which are much used in boiling Fish, &c. viz. Sweet Marjoram, Winter Savory, pick'd Parsley, stripped Thyme, and tops of Rosemary. Ginger bruised is good to put in the Liquor Fish is boiled in, when you boil them, and so is long Pepper.

§ 7. The best seasoning Spices for Fish are Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt. The Roots of Horse-radish sliced is very good to put into the Liquor you boil Fish in, and good to use in Fish Sauce; it having a sharp biting tast, is the more proper for Fish. After you have put your Fish into the boiling Liquor, (which is to boil up to the very heighth at putting them in) let the Liquor boil then very gently, and leisurely, otherwise the Fish will fall to pieces, and break.

Use

Use for want of Horse-radish-root, sliced Ginger, and long Pepper to boil Fish with.

§ 8. The best general Sauce for Fish is Butter, beat up with 3 or 4 Spoonfuls of boiling hot Spring-water, to keep it from becoming Oily: And, you may scald, or something more than half boil Parsley, and shred it, and mingle it with the Butter; or, instead thereof, put some slices of Horse-radish-root into 4 or 5 Spoonfuls of water and let them macerate therein one hour or two, then boil up the water, and take out the Horse-radish, and beat up your Butter in the Water, or which is best, dissolve an Anchovy or 2, in 4 or 5 Spoonfuls of boiling Water; then beat up your Butter for Sauce with the boiling Water, and beat also the Yolk of an Egg in the Butter, if you like Eggs.

§ 9. If you bake any Fish, let them be well seasoned with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, all powdered small, and Pepper grossly powdered, and Salt; and likewise put among the Fish store of Currans, well washed and cullendered, and on the top of all, great store of good Butter.

§ 10. Trouts, Chubs, Carps, Pearches, Breams, Roches, Daces, Gudgeons, and Graylings, should be eat the very same day they are caught; else they are not so good by many degrees.

§ 11. Salmons, Pikes, Trouts, Carps, and River large Breams, of the biggest size, are accounted

accounted stately Fish: But Salmons, Trouts, Pearches of the River, Graylings, Gudgeons, and Ruffs are reputed the best Fish; next to them, the Pike, Carp, Bream, and Tench are of estimation; then the Roch, and Dace caught in Rivers, but the Barbel, and Chub are the least valued, being thought to be the worst of all fresh Water Fish, though good Cookery will make them excellent meat. The Leach is as pleasant and good a Fish as any, and the Eel is ranked by some in the first Class for deliciousness, but not wholeness.

§ 12. If you desire your Butter for Fish Sauce to be thicker than ordinary, after you have beat up the Butter in Water, as aforesaid, then beat the Yolk of an Egg or 2 in Butter, and it relishes well.

§ 13. Finally, let me tell you that in the course of my Observations, I know amongst all sorts of Fish, none differ amongst themselves in taste more than Eels; for I have eat of them, taken out of above 30 several Rivers, and amongst the rest of the *Thames*, *Severn* and *Trent* Eel; yet none that I ever met with, were to be compared for goodness (although not very large) and deliciousness of taste, to the Eels caught in a small River in Lancashire called *Irk*, which is composed of 3 small Brooks, that have their conflux near unto *Middleton Hall*, where it assumes the Name of *Irk*, and thence descends through

Blakely

Blakely and Crumpfall, &c. to Manchester; where under Chetham's Hospital, it mingles its Waters with the Irwell, and thereunto pays the Tribute of its Name. Neither are the Inhabitants on its Banks partial in their Judgments, by reason of their Vicinity, but it's highly applauded for its excellent taste, by Persons meer Strangers, and such as have the estimation of curious Pallats, and having often enquired of the Neighbouring People to it, what might be the reason, they have unanimously ascribed it to the numerousness of Fulling Mills that stand on that River; and say that the Fat, Oyl, and Grease scoured out of the Cloath, makes the Eels Pallatable and Fat, above other River Eels. And, perhaps their Opinion may come nearer Truth, than any Philosophical reason, or cause can possibly be assigned: For I have frequently reflected on the Rivers running pretty swift, and upon a Canker'd, and very Meagre, Hungry Soil, Pebble Stones, and Gravel, and not to run slow, nor upon a Fat, Marly, or Chalky Soil: So consequently the Water, not thereby impregnated with any Unctuous, Fattening Spirit. In the same River there are Trouts, though not so many as formerly, yet those that are caught in it, are not inferior for goodness and excellency of taste, to any that ever I eat of; notwithstanding that I have eat of the Derbyshire Trouts, caught in Dove, Wye, and Lathkin; and of Trouts taken in many other

other parts of England. But it's time I put a period to this Discourse, and my Chapter of Cookery of Fish.

The Romans when arrived at their greatest Glory and heighth of Luxury, had strange and prodigious Excesses about their Fish, as well as in other things; they had Fish-ponds, out of which they raised 400000 Sesterces Annual Rent (each Sesterce being a Penny half Penny Farthing and half Farthing of our Sterling, and every Thousand Sesterces 7th 16 s. 4 d. Sterling) which is about 3165 £ Sterling.

At their Feasts they caused their Fish in an ostentatious manner to be weighed, and their Guests and Friends in their Table-Books would insert the weight of each Fish, which gave occasion to Horace in *Lib. 2. Sat. 2.* to say,

— *Laudas iugis trilibrem
Mullum.*

And they would not boggle to give 1000 Sesterces for each Pound weight of a large Mullet, as appears by Juvenal Sat. 4.

— *Mullum Sex millibus emit,
Æquante m̄ sane paribus Sestercia libris.*

But another gave more, for, *Tres Mulos triginta millibus nummum vanisse graviter con-
questus est*, says Suetonius, Cap. 34. of the Em-
perour

perour *Tiberius*, which is about 237 lb Sterling. They Exhausted, by their Monstros Luxury, the Fish out of their own adjacent Seas, and had them brought a far off, as appears by *Juvenal*, Sat. 5.

*Mullus erat Dominae quem misit Corsica,
vel quem
Tauromenetana rupes, q. non omne pera-
ditum est,
Et jam defecit nostrum mare—*

And of the Lamprey to the like purpose, in the same Sat.

*Virroni Murena datur, quæ maxima venit
Gurgite de Siculo—*

They were so Nice and Delicate, that they caused their Fish to be brought alive to their Tables, in Glasc Bottles filled with Water, scarce believing them to be alive, unless they expired in their Guests Hands : *In cubili natant pisces, & sub ipsa mensa capitur, qui statim trans-feratur in mensam. Sen. Nat. Quest. 3. 17.*

*Ad Mullum expirantem versicolore quedam &
numerosa varietate spectari Proces gulæ narrant.
Plin. 9. 17.*

Nay, they pretended to such curious Palats, that they could tell either by their Tast, or Eye, on what Coast the Fish they eat on were bred, as appears by *Juvenal* Sat. 4. speaking of *Curtius Montanus*.

— Cir-

Circais nata forent, ^{et}
Lucidum ad Saxum R. : in ipso edita fundo
Ostrea, caecili prius deprendere morsu,
Et semel aspecti dicebat iustus Echini.

Domitian the Emperor could cause his Lampreys in his Fish-ponds at Baja, to come at his call, and they would lick his Hands, as testifies Martial, lib. 4. Epig. 30.

Piscator fage, ne nocens recedas,
Sacris piscibus ha natantur undæ,
Qui norunt Dominum, manumq; lambunt
Illam, qua nihil est in orbe majus
Quid quod nomen habent, & ad magistri
Vocem quisq; sui venit, citatus!

Which latter part is confirm'd by Pliny lib. 10.
70. Spectantur & in piscinis Cæsar's genera pis-
cium ad nomen venire, quosdamq; singulos. Mon-
sieur Bernier in his History of Indostan, reports
the like of the great Mogull.

Antonia the Wife of Drusus, at Baulos hung
Jewels like Ear-rings, at the Neck of a Lamprey which she fancied ; and Hortensius the Orator wept for the death of a Lamprey which he dearly affected, as testifies Pliny 9. 55.

The Tender-heartedness of this Orator, puts me in mind of the Piety of a Cardinal, who caused a Pompous Funeral to be made for a Dog of his which died, and at the Inter-
U ment,

ment, Priest solemnly to Mass, which argued the Cardinal to be a true Mahometan, (who believed Dogs to have Souls, and are very Charitable to them) as well as a Zealous Catholick in freeing his Dogs Soul from Purgatory.

C H A P. XL.

*Treats of the Laws of Angling, and
the Preservation of Fish.*

§ 1. Since Ignorance of the Laws Excuses none; it will not be amiss to say something of those which concern the Angler, that he may have a little knowledge, how without Offence, to demean himself amongst his Neighbours, when he goes about his Sport. And as Angling is of great Antiquity, so it's not meanly favoured, both by the Common and Statute Laws of this Realm. For by the Statute of 1 Eliz. Cap. 17. Prohibiting the taking of Fish with Nets, not of such and such a size; yet, by a proviso therein, the Angler is at liberty to catch, either as big, or little as he can.

§ 2. Though this Recreation be simply in itself Lawful; yet none can go on anothers Ground, without the License of the immediate

diate Owner, or the Law, but he's a Trespasser; but if one have License to enter into a Close, or Ground for such a spate of time, there, tho' he practice Angling all that time, he is not a Trespasser, because his fishing is no abuse of his License; but this is to be understood of running Streams, and not of Pits, Ponds or standing Pools: For, in case of a Pit, Pond, or standing Pool, the Owner thereof hath a property in the Fish, and they are so far said to be *pisces suos*, or *ipsius*, his, that he may have an Action of Trespass for the Fish, against any one that shall take them without his License, though it be upon a Common, or adjoining to the King's Highway, or adjoining to another Man's Ground who gives License; but in case of a River, where one or more have *Libera Piscaria* only, it is otherwise, for there the Fishes are said to be *fera naturæ*, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Trespass; for that none is said to have a property in them, till he have caught them: And then it is a Trespass for any to take them from him. But, this is not to be understood of Fishes confined to a Mans own Ground by Gates, Grates, or otherwise, so that they cannot pass away, but may be taken out, or put in at Pleasure: For in that case the Party hath a property in them, as in the case of a standing Pool.
Brook Title Trespass, Fitz. Trespass, F. N. B.
86, 87, 88.

§ 3. None can erect a Park, Chase, or Warren

ren but by the King's License under the great Seal; but Fish-ponds being a matter of profit, and encrease of Victuals, any Man may erect, Coke 2 Instit. f. 199.

§ 4. No Larceny can be committed of Fish, that be at their natural Liberty in Rivers, or great Waters; because they are *Nullius in bonis*, but Larceny may be committed of Fishes in a Trunk, Net, or Pond; because they are not at their natural Liberty, Coke's 3 Instit. f. 109, 110, Stanford. Plac. Cor. f. 25. C. Hales Pleas of Crown 67. But I suppose it is not meant by these Judges, that the taking of Fish out of a Pond, where they continually live and breed, (for that should seem to be only a Trespass) should be Felony, but I think they mean, that in case you put Fish (as many do) into a Net, or Trunk, and lay the same in a Pond, and to be ready for the Owners use; that, to take such Fish is Felony.

§ 5. If a Man seised of a River, and do grant by Deed *Separalem Piscariam* in the same, and make Livery and Seisin secundam formam Chartæ, neither the Soil nor Water do pass; for the Grantor may take Water there, and if the River become dry, he may take the benefit of the Soil. And if a Man grant *aquam suam*, the Soil shall not pass, but the *Piscary*. Coke sur. Litt. f. 4, 6.

§ 6. One may prescribe to have *Separalem Piscariam* in such a Water, and the Owner of the Soil shall not Fish there; but if he claim

communiam Piscaria, or liberam Piscariam, the Owner of the Soil shall Fish there, Coke sur. Litt. f. 122. a.

§ 7. If one hath a Fish-pool, and grant me all the Fish therein, I may not dig the Ground to make a Trench, but must take the Fish with Nets, or other Engines, Perk. § 110.

§ 8. If one grant all the Fish in his Pond, by this is granted a power to come and Fish for them; but the Grantee may not hereby dig a Trench, and let out the Water to take the Fish, albeit they cannot be otherwise taken, Fitz. Bar. 237.

§ 9. One grants, totam Piscariam, salvo stagno molendini sui, by this the Piscary passeth, and the Stagnum, and not the Piscary, is excepted, Plowd. 161.

§ 10. Trespass for fishing in his several fishing, the Defendant prescribes to have a Common of fishing there, and may prescribe to have that Appendant to Land, as well as Common Appendant, 4 Ed. 4. f. 29.

§ 11. One may have a free fishing in the Soil of another, but a several fishing must be in his own Soil, 4 Ed. 3. Title Trespass, 222. 43 H. 3. Title 443. B. Assize. 17 Ed. 4, 6. 18 Ed. 4. f. 5. 18 H. 6, 29.

§ 12. There are but two Writs in the Register for fishing, viz. in a several fishing, and a free fishing. Vid. Register 34, 95, 103.

§ 13. There are diverse manners of Forms of Writs for fishing, one Quare, &c. in Viva-

riis suis piscatus fuit, &c. another *Quare, &c.* in
Separali Piscaria ipsius A. piscatus fuit, &c. and
another, as before, *Quare in libera piscar. ipsius*
A. apud N. piscatus fuit. F. N. B. 88.

Douay
etc.
§ 14 Trespass, *Quare clausum fregit & pis-*
ces suos cepit, without specifying their Number,
or Nature is bad and insufficient ; and is
not made good by the Verdict, altho' the Jury
found for the Plaintiff, and altho' the Writ be
so, yet the Declaration ought to reduce the ge-
nerality of the Writ to certainty, and par-
ticularity, to which the Defendant may answer ;
so that a certain Judgment may be given, and
if it was by Original, the Writ shall be Gene-
ral, but the Declaration ought to comprehend
the Fish in certainty ; and so are the Presidents,
Vid. Cok. 5. Rep. Plaisters Case.

§ 15. Where any hath *Separalis Piscaria*,
there the Fish may be said to be His, because
no Man else may take them whilst they are
within his several fishing, as appears by *Child*
and *Greenhills Case.* And Trespass lies for ta-
king them, *Jones Rep. 440.*

§ 16. A several fishing is where one hath
the Royalty, and oweth the Ground on each
side of the Water, and no Man can have a
several fishing, but in his own Soil, but a free
fishing may be in the Soil of another Man,
Mich. 17. Ed. 4. 6. Pasc. 18. Ed. 4. 4.

§ 17. If I come upon another Man's Ground
without his Licence, or the Licence of the
Law, I am a Trespasser ; for which, the Owner

er may have an Action of Trespass against me ; and if I continue there after warning, by the Owner, or his Servant thereunto Authorized, the Owner or his Servant, by his Command, may put me off by force, but not beat me, but in case of Resistance by me : For then I (by resisting) make the Assault, but if he beat me, I not resisting, in that case he makes the Assault, and I may beat him in defence of my Person, and to free my self from his Violence. F.N.B.

Trespass 9 Ed. 4. 21. 19. H. 6. 31. 6¹. 10 Ed. 4. 6. 5 H. 4. 9. 11. H. 6. 33. lib. Intr. 611. Coke's 2 Inst. 316.

§ 18. If I leave my Angle-rod behind in another's Ground, he may take it Damage feasant, but he can neither take it from my Person by force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to me. *Vid. Reynel and Champernoon's Case, Croke's Rep. tempore Caroli, f. 228.*

§ 19. Our Ancestors consider'd, That, *Homo homini Lupus*, therefore they made that excellent Law of 43 Eliz. Cap. 6. which provides, That in Personal Actions, in the Courts at Westminster (being not for Land or Battery) when it shall appear to the Judges (and be so by them signified) That the Debt or Damages to be recovered, amount not to 40 s. or above, the Judges shall award to thd Plaintiff no more, but less, if they please, Costs than Damages. This Law is enlarged by another made 22 and 23 Car. 2. Cap. 9. wherein it's Enacted, That in all Actions of

Trespass, Assault and Battery, and other Personal Actions, wherein the Judge, at the Tryal, shall not find and certify under his Hand, upon the back of the Record, that an Assault and Battery was sufficiently proved, or that the Free-hold, or Title of the Land mentioned in the Declaration, was chiefly in question, the Plaintiff in such Action, in case the Jury shall find the Damages under 40 s. shall not recover more Costs of Suit, than the Damages so found amount unto : And if any more Costs be awarded, the Judgment shall be void, and the Defendant acquitted from the same, and may have an Action, and recover Costs and Damages for such vexatious Suit.

§ 20. Thus the Angler may see how to defend himself; in case any be quarrelsome and vexatious to him: However, there are many Statutes made for preservation of Fish, and some very severe against any that take Fish out of another's Pond, Pit, Pool, or several fishing: Therefore I shall give him their Abridgment, and caution him not to offend therein; for the Penalties in some are (and not without reason) very severe and sharp; Therefore it will be most prudent not to Angle any where but in Rivers and Streams, in which none can claim a several Fishing, otherwise he'll subject himself, and become liable to great Punishments; and when he has occasion, let him consult the Statutes at large, for his more clearer satisfaction; in the interim

terim, he must content himself with the subsequent Abridgment.

§ 21. Trespassors in Parks or Ponds shall give treble Damages to the Party grieved, suffer three years imprisonment, be fined at the King's Pleasure, and give Surety never to offend in the like kind again; and if they cannot find Surety, they shall abjure the Realm, or being Fugitive, shall be outlawed. *Westm. 1. cap. 20. 3 Ed. 1. Coke's 2. Instit. 199, 200.*

§ 22. None shall take Salmons betwixt the 8 of September, and the 11 of November, nor young Salmons with Nets or other Engines, at Mill-pools, betwixt the midst of April, and the 24 of June, on pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the first Offence; for the second, to suffer a quarter of a years Imprisonment; for the third, a years Imprisonments; and after to have their Punishment increased according to the Trespass; and in places where fresh Waters be, Overseers of this Statute shall be assigned and sworn to enquire of the Offenders. *Westm. 2. 47. 13 Ed. 1. cap. 47. Coke's 2. Instit. 477.*

§ 23. No Fisher shall use any Engine whereby the Fry of Fish may be destroyed, upon the pains mentioned in the Stat. of *West. 2. cap. 47.*

Salmons in Lancashire shall not be taken betwixt Michaelmas and Candlemas; Conservators shall be sworn to see this Statute observed, and the Offenders punished, *13 R. 2. cap. 19.*

§ 24. None

§ 24. None shall use any Net, Device or Engine whatsoever, to destroy, kill, or take the Spawn or Fry of Eels, Pike, Pickerel, Salmon, or of any other Fish, or take Salmons or Trout, not being in Season, nor shall take or kill Pikes shorter than 10 inches, Salmons than 16, Trout than 8, or Barbels than 12, or more, or shall use any Engine or Device whatsoever, to take Fish, other than and except an Angle, or a Net or Tramel of 2 inches and an half mesh or mask; in pain to forfeit 20 s. the Fish so wrongfully taken, and the Net or Engine so wrongfully used.

All persons having Jurisdiction of Conservancy upon Streams or Waters, and Lords of *Leets* have power, upon the Oaths of Twelve Men, to hear and determin these Offences, and shall have all the Forfeitures which shall accrue thereupon.

The Steward of a *Leet* shall give this Statute in charge to the Jury, in pain of 40 s. to be divided betwixt the King and Informer.

Here if the Jury wilfully forbear to present Offences of this kind, the Steward or Bailiff shall impannel another Jury, to enquire of their Default, which being found, the first Jury shall forfeit 20 s. a-piece.

Upon Default of Presentment within one year, in *Leets*, Justices of Peace in Sessions, Justices of *Oyer and Terminer*, and Justices of Assize in Circuits, have power to hear and determin the said Offences.

This

This Act shall not restrain the taking of Smelts, Loaches, Minnows, Bull-heads, Gudgeons, or Eels, with Nets or Engines formerly used, so that no other Fish be taken therewith, nor shall extend to abridge any former Priviledge of Conservancy lawfully enjoyed, or fishing in *Tweed, Usk or Wye*, or in Waters let to Farm by the Queen; so that the Spawn or Fry of Fish be not therein wilfully destroyed. Stat. 1 Eliz. 17.

§ 25. None shall unlawfully break, cut down, cut out, or destroy any Head, or Heads, Dam, or Dams, of any Ponds, Pools, Moats Stagnes, Stews, or several Pits, wherein Fish are, or shall happen to be put in, or stored withal by the Owners or Possessioners thereof, or do or shall wrongfully fish in the same, to the intent to destroy, kill, take or steal away any of the same Fish against the Mind of the Owners, or Possessioners thereof, without Licence of the Owner, in pain to suffer three Months Imprisonment, and to be bound with good Sureties to the good Behaviour, for seven years after.

The Party shall in Sessions or elsewhere, recover treble Damages against the Delinquent, and upon satisfaction, shall have liberty to procure his Release of the Behaviour.

Justices of *Oyer and Terminer*, *Affize*, *Peace* and *Goal Delivery*, have power to hear and determin these Offences.

Justices of *Peace*, upon the Offenders Acknow-

knowledgment in Sessions, and Satisfaction to the Party grieved, shall have power to release the Behaviour. *Vid. Stat. 5 Eliz. cap. 21.*

§ 26. None shall erect a Weir or Weirs along the Sea-shore, or in any Haven or Creek, or within five Miles of the mouth of any Haven or Creek, or shall willingly take or destroy any Spawn, Fry, or Brood of any Sea-fish, in pain of 10 l. to be divided between the King and Prosecutor; neither shall any Fish in any of the said places, with any Net of a less mesh than 3 inches and an half betwixt knot and knot (except for the taking of Smoulds in Norfolk only) or with a Canvas Net, or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fish may be destroyed, on pain to forfeit the said Net or Engine, and 10 s. in Money to be divided betwixt the Poor and Prosecutor, and to be Levied in Corporations by the head Officers; and in other places by Distress and Sale of Goods upon a Warrant of a Justice of Peace directed unto the Constable and Churchwardens of the same Parish for that purpose, *3 Jac. cap. 12.*

§ 27. By the Statute of 17 R. 2. cap. 9. Justices of Peace shall be Conservators of the Statute of Westm. 2. cap. 47. and 13 R. 2. cap. 19. and shall have powers to search all Weirs, lest by their straitness, the Fry of Fish may be destroyed.

Justices of Peace shall have power to appoint and swear Under-conservators, to hear and

and determin Offences of this kind, and to punish the Offenders by Imprisonment and Fine, whereof the Under-Conservator, which informs, is to have the half.

The Major or Wardens of *London* have like power in *Thames*, from *Stanes* to *London*, and in *Medway*, as far as the City Grant extends.

17 R. 2. cap. 9.

§ 28. If any person shall use any Net or Engine whatsoever, or shall take any Fish by any other Means or Device whatsoever, in any Pond or several Water, or shall be aiding or assisting thereunto, without the Consent of the Owner of the Water, and be convicted by Confession, Oath of one Witness, within one Month, before one Justice of Peace, he shall recompence the Party such Damages, and in such time as the Justice shall think fit, not exceeding treble Damages, and pay to the Overseer of the Poor, for the use of the Poor, such Sum of Money as the Justice shall think fit, not exceeding 10 s. and in Default of Payment, to be levied by Distress and Sale of Goods, and for want of Distress, to commit the Offender to the House of Correction, for such time as the Justice shall think fit, not exceeding one Month. Unless he shall be bound with one or more competent Surety's to the Party grieved, not exceeding 10 l. never to offend in like manner.

Every Justice of Peace before whom such Offender shall be convict, may cut in pieces, and destroy all and every the Nets and Engines whatso-

whatsoever therewith the Offender is apprehended.

Every Person that finds himself aggrieved with the Judgment of the Justice of Peace, may Appeal to the next General Quarter-Sessions of Peace, whose Order and Determination thereof shall be Final, if no Title to any Land, Royalty or Fishery, be therein concerned.

This Act or any thing therein shall not take away, or Abridge His Majesties Royalty, or Prerogative Royal. *Vid. at large the Stat. of 22 and 23 Car. Secundi, cap. 25.*

§ 29. Thus you have an Abridgment of most Cases and Acts of Parliament that generally concern Angling or Fish; now let me briefly insert one or two Cases, and conclude this Chapter.

§ 30. Trespass for entring and breaking his Close and fishing in *Separali Piscaria sua*, and for taking *Pisces suos*, *ibid. viz.* 100 Eels, &c. after Verdict for the Plaintiff upon *Not Guilty* pleaded, and Damages entirely given. Moved in Arrest of Judgment that the Declaration was ill; because it says, *Pisces suos*, for he hath not any Property in the Fish until he takes them, and hath them in his possession, being *terram Naturae*; and the same being matter of substance is not helped by the Verdict; but Judgment affirmed, *per curiam*, and agreed that being in, *Separali Piscaria sua*, it may well be said, *Pisces suos*, for there is not any other may take them, wherefore being taken out of his several Piscary, and not,

extra

extra liberam Piscariam suam, the Action is
maintainable.

In a general sense they cannot be said, *pisces ipsius*, but in a particular sense they may; and a Man may have a special and qualified property in things, *fera naturæ*, three ways, *ratione Infirmitatis*, *ratione Loci*, & *ratione Privilegij*, and in this Case the Plaintiff hath them by way of Priviledge. So for Deer in a Park, Conies in a Warren, Doves in a Dove-coat, the owner hath a special Property in them, and may say, *suos*; but if they be not in a Park, Warren or Dove-coat, he may not say, *suos*, unless he add, that they were Domestick. *Vid. Crokes Rep. tempore Caroli f. 554. Child and Greenhills Case. Vid. same Case Rep. Marsh, f. 48, and 49,* and *Jones Rep. f. 440, and Hughs Abridgment f. 1972 C. S. 26.*

Marsh says, that the Action was brought for Fishing in *Separali Piscaria sua*, without mentioning the Close, and so doth *Jones* in his *Rep. 440*. Thus you may perceive what care and respect our Fore-fathers had to the preservation of Fish, and how many Statutes the wisdom of many Parliaments multiplied to that end (besides many others about Sea Fish, which I do not so much as mention) that every one might reap the benefit or pleasure of their own Fish, and sufficient store be preserved from the Roguish Tricks of Rascally and loose Fellows; whose punishments, if they be taken Offending, are not mean and slight, and
one

one would think sufficient to deter them from Trespassing in that Nature.

*Queritur, ut crescent tot magna Volumina Legis
In promptu causa est, crescit in orbe dolus.*

I had thought to have given a Description of the prime Rivers in *England* and *Wales*, and of the Fish they are furnished with; but in the attempting thereof I found my self not a little deceiv'd by the difficulty I met with, and that the same was not to be accomplished by any other way than Travel: the Account our Chorographers give thereof being so lame and imperfect, that it had been ridiculous to have inserted any thing out of them; besides, to have described a few particular Rivers only, within the narrow compafs of my own knowledge and experience, and omitted many others far more meriting, had been injurious, and a general Description useless: therefore since I am not so able as willing to gratify the Angler herein, I Question not but to have my Pardon pass with more ease, than if I had troubled him with a rude and insignificant Discourse thereof.

However, *en passant*, I will tell you that there are reputed to be in *England* and *Wales* 594 Rivivers, whereof *England* claims 350, and *Wales* 244, for her share, but how the number comes to be so great, I cannot conceive, unless some Rivulets are taken into the Accompt, and then the number should seem to be greater.

As

As to their diversities, their situations, their distance and remoteness, their nearness or vicinity to the Sea, so they are different both in the qualities of their Water, as also their various kinds and species of Fishes; those that have a more immediate intercourse with the Ocean, participate of its influence, and have the same Vicissitudes, the same tides and refluxes, the same Salt-water, and the same sort of Fish which frequent the Sea where they disembogue themselves; these are too deep to be fathom'd by the cordage of a Line, but the more inland, and further distant from the common receptacle of Waters, are the Rivers most proper for the Anglers Divertisement. The principal Rivers in *England*, are the *Thames*, *Severn*, *Trent*, *Tine*, *Tees*, *Tweed*, *Medway*, *Dove*, *Isis*, *Tame*, *Willey*, *Avon*, *Lea*, *Irwel*, *Lon*, *Nen*, *Welland*, *Derwent*, *Calder*, *Wharf*, *Nid*, *Don*, *Swale*, *Hull*, *Wharfe*, *Ouse*, and *Are*. Principal Rivers in *Wales*, are the *Dee*, *Wye*, *Conwy*, *Tivy*, *Chedday*, *Clud*, *Usk*, *Towy*, *Taff*, *Dovy*, &c. But the Maps will give you a better prospect than any can by enumerating them, therefore let every ingenious Angler, have a large Map of *England*, or at least of the particular County where he usually Angles, and thereby he may with delight view and observe the Spring-head, site, distance, various passages, windings, turnings, and confluxes of each particular River, with what Towns, Castles,

Churches, Gentlemens Houses, and places of Note are near or on their Banks, and make, as you Angle, Remarks proper to the nature of each.

Several Rivers in *England* run under Ground and then rise again, as a Branch of the *Medway* in *Kent*, the *Mole* in *Surrey*, *Hans* in *Staffordshire*, the little Rivers *Alen* in *Denbyshire*, and *Douaril* in *Wiltshire*: The Rives *Recall* hides it self under Ground, near unto *Elmsley* in the North riding of *Yorkshire*. At *Ashwel* in *Bedfordshire*, rise so many sources of Springs that they soon drive a Mill. At *Chedder* near *Axbidge* in *Somersetshire*, is a Spring that drives Twelve Mills in a quarter of a Mile. In the midst of the River *Nen*, South of *Peterborough* in *Northamptonshire*, is a deep Gulf call'd *Medewell*, so cold, that in Summer no Swimmer is able to indure it, yet not Frozen in Winter, but of these enough.

C H A P. XLI.

*Is a Supplement to the 23, and 37
Chap. foregoing.*

Because the Pike is so noble a Fish, and of such magnitude, and that many Rivers are plentifully stored therewith; it's not inconvenient, if I by way of Supplement make

make a more particular discourse of him than before, which I doubt not but will be both acceptable, and delightsom to many.

§ 1. You are told before that the Pike is very voracious, even so greedy that he'll devour those of his own Species, only he seldom adventures on a Pearch, unless hunger compels him; because of the Fins and Prickles on the Pearches Back, which are not a little offensive to his Maw, therefore a Pearch is the worst Bait for him; by reason the Pike has an Antipathy against him, for not being so easily devour'd as others.

§ 2. The Shape or Figure of the Pike's Body is very long, his Back broad, and almost square, altogether equal to the lowest Fins, his Head is lean and very bony, his Snout is long like the Bill, or Beak of a Gooſe, and his lower Jaw is far longer than his upper, and in it are placed many Teeth, not orderly disposed, but of diverse ranks and orders, his Eyes are of a Golden Colour, and very quick-sighted, (as are all sorts of Fish) his Belly is always White, but his Back and Sides are of a Black, speckled with Yellow, if a fat one, but the Sides are White and Pale in a thin, lean Fish, his Ventricle is large and capacious, and his Throat short; as for his Age, there is diversity of Opinions; some say he'll live 40, or 50 Years, others but 10. Some grow faster, some slower, according to the diversity of their Water and Feed. River Fish grow much

faster than Pond Fish, unless the Pond be very large, and have a good Stream run through it; fresh Water being a great forwarder of Fishes feeding. Jacks and Pickerels grow faster than great ones: One spawn'd in a clear springing Brook in *March*, will be 18 inches long the next *March*; a River Pike grows fast till he arrive at 24, or 30 inches in length, then he stands a little more at a stay, and spreads himself in Thickness; after he'll grow a long time, and be much longer growing to his full bigness, (which is about 45 inches in length) from 30 inches, than he was increasing to that proportion. He's a great breeder, and spawns about mid *March*, unless the Spring be mild and forward, and then about the end of *February*.

S 3. In storing your Ponds, put in all your Jacks of a bigness; for a Pike of 30 inches scruples not to devour one of 15. Some are apt to grow more in length, others in breadth and thickness, which latter sort are best fed, and firmest Fishes; for a lean, slender Pike, though he seem to advance in length; yet is commonly a waster, and in a decaying condition; by reason of some outward Wound or Hurt by the Otter, or some stronger of his own kind, or is inwardly pricked by the Hook, or some other Casualty; yet he'll live and be as hungry and greedy as ever. A still, shady and unfrequented place, thick sheltred, where he receives no disturbance at his feeding, and where

where a Ditch joins upon a River, or a Spring, or small Brook run into it, or a solitary and retired corner, not beaten with Fishers, or his flattering Friends, are commodious and pleasant for his growth.

§ 4. The Male is generally in season, firm, delicious and inviting to the Eater, though at worst from 15 February until beginning of April, but the Females are out of season from about Candlemas until mid May, but in season the rest of the Year, especially in August, September, October and November. The middle size are better than either the greater, or smaller ones, which latter always eat loose and washy, by reason of their quick growth. One taken fat out of a River is far better and sweeter, than one fed fat in a Pond, except he be taken out of the Pond, and put into a running Stream to clear a while before eaten.

§ 5. A thicker sort of Water, if it be not fowl and muddy, is of a better consistency, and the parts better disposed for Nutrition, than those of a more thin and rarified Substance: For Fish cannot live by pure Water or by Respiration, or sucking in those flender particles of his beloved Element, without the concurrence and assistance of some grosser and terrene Qualities, which are intermingled with those liquid Bodies; this is the reason why Fish are the fattest, though not altogether the sweetest, that live amongst Weeds and thick Fog, living and thriving with a little more re-

refreshment, than what they receive from the fatness the Soil imparts. Fen Fish brought up into clear and higher Waters, will thrive much, and be sweeter; but whether the contrary, is a *Query*.

The Pikes Haunt, and Harbour.

§ 6. His hold is usually amongst, or near a Bank of Weeds, as of Flags, Bull-rushes, Cандocks, Reeds, or of green Fog: However, he often shoots out, and sports in the clear Stream, taking his pleasure in the middle of the Water, and in Pools full of Fry. If the whole River be weedy, you'll be at a loss to find out his Quarters, but if the River be free from Weeds, only here and there a Bank, or Bed of Bull-rushes, you may safely conclude those are his retirements and baiting places. If your River consists of Pits, have a care to the top and bottom thereof; he's sometimes caught in the middle, but his principal Haunt is at the bottom of the Pit or Pooll; and usually where one is taken at the upper part, another hath been found at the foot or bottom of the Pooll. In Winter, and cold Weather he lies deeper and nearer bottom; but as Summer approaches, and the Weather becomes warmer, he shoots into more shallow places: in March they shoot into the Scours to spawn, but after April begins, he lies in shallows.

In a clear, calm, hot, sultry, gleamy Day,
he

he gets to the surface of the Water, and then a snare is most proper : For offer him a Bait, and he'll immediatly retreat to his lowest retirements.

A Ford that is clear and gravelly at the bottom, especially having a Pooll, or Pit adjoining to it that is indifferently deep and weedy, is a probable place ; for though they generally affect a deep Water, yet they'll get near to a Ford or Shallow, where they'll delight themselves, and sport with the small Fry. So are Scours and Pits, or Poolls near Mills, either above or below them, commonly well stored with Fish, so is a Mill Dam that is deep and weedy.

Rivers that are straight and level are not so good to Fish, as those that are crooked and have many corners and turnings ; for Fish will get into those Creeks and Channels, and hide themselves in their private apartments. If the Water be narrow you may fish both sides, and sooner chop upon them, and it's more pleasant Trowling ; but where it's broad and deep, there is more uncertainty, in their Haunt and Harbour, so that they are not easily found, or light upon.

If they bite at all, they commonly take the Bait at first throw ; therefore it's needless to cast the Bait above once or twice at the most in the same place.

He delights much in a middle retirement, the River being about 4 foot deep, is a good

proportion for the Trowler: For if deeper, they are more difficult to stir, and harder to find; and if shallower, apt to see you, and shun your Bait.

Small Jacks will often lie not above one, or two foot from the top of the Water, and sometimes on the very surface; at such time keep at a distance, and come not nigh the River till the Bait is in.

Trowling time.

§ 7. *February*, if it be a dry season and open, is one of the best Trowling Months. In *March* they spawn and are Sick; therefore bite ill, and it's not so good for the Trowl as Snap; for you'll scarce take one then at Trowl, except it be a Male Fish. *April*, and until the middle of *May*, especially if it be cold and windy, is propitious to the sport, because the Weeds which have couched all Winter, begin then to erect their heads. From mid *May* until *September* it's bad Trowling, by reason of the Weeds; but if you'll Trowl in the Summer, let the Day be dark, gloomy and windy, and rather use the Snap than Trowl, though either way you'll take more Weeds than Fish. From the beginning of *September* until *Martinmas*, if you be not disturbed with Rain or Floods, especially *October*, is good; because the Weeds then fall and rot, and the Fish are fat with the Summers feed. After a glut of Rain,

Rain, or some great Showers, a Pike never bites well, nor whilst the Water is thick, and any thing muddy. Pikes bites best in clear Waters and windy Days, about three in the Afternoon. Mornings and Evenings are best in Summer, because Fish towards Noon, get to the top of the Water, and are then more mindful of Play than Meat. In a clear, calm, hot, sultry or gleamy day, in Summer, they get to the top of the Water, and then a Snare is more proper than a Bait. In *February, March, October and November*, one part of the day differs not much from the other, but about Noon is best. All Winds are good except the East. A Pike will feed to that excess and fulness, that he cannot gorge your Bait, yet will he rise and shew himself, and make many offers, so that you may often catch him with the Snap.

Baits for the Pike.

§ 8. Roch, Dace and Bleak are the prime Baits, especially if the River be any thing muddy, or the Day dark and cloudy; because they are bright, and shine in the Water, and Roch and Dace are the hardest, and will endure the longest on the Hook. In a bright Day, and clear, transparent Water, a large Gudgeon is the best Bait, and is very sweet though tender, and will soon burst; also Trout, Chubs and Jacks that are small, and Minnows and Loaches that are large, are
very

very good Baits, so is a piece of an Eel; for it's very sweet to him; and in Hay-time, a yellow, bright Frog is very good, especially for the ledger Bait. A Pearch is the worst Bait, because a Pike has an Antipathy against him, but if necessity compel you to use him, cut off all his Fins and Pickles, and scrape off his Scales, and it's better for Snap than Troll, and in clear Water, than dark.

Let all your Baits for Pike, be fresh and sweet and alive the same day you use them; for with stale Baits you'll have small success, especially in Summer, or at Trowl or ledger Bait. Sometimes with one fresh Bait, you may take three or four Jacks, or more; for a Fish that bites greedily, and swallows the Bait presently, does not tear it so much, as one that plays with it in his Mouth, and then leaves it; for a Bait is not much worse for being chopt, and full of holes, so that it hang well on the Hook, and the Lead be not seen: For one Pike will feed well after another, and the Bait will still be the sweeter, the more it is bitten, if it be not used so long to be Watersopt. One fresh Bait will wear out two or three stale ones. But for the Snap, if they look bright, and glister in the Water, it's not material whether they be old or new; for any thing that may affect the Eye, may be used at Snap, which is the reason that Artificial Gudgeons and Roches are made to use at Snap, but are worth little for the Trowl.

Some

Some there are that fish with their baits alive having short Hooks fashioned accordingly with more Joints, and without Lead, and use it as a ledger Bait, only keeping it a foot from the bottom, with a Float of Cork, which is a very murthering way.

If you have a Cast-Net, you may catch Baits in one day, that will serve a quarter of a year; choose out those you like, and put them in a Trunk with holes in it, and lay the same in a Pond.

If you trawl with a middle sized Gudgeon, large Minnow or Loach, you may catch Pearch as well as Pikes:

If you'll use a ledger Bait for Pike, as some will lay forty or fifty, and begin to draw at the first was laid, let it be kept a foot from the bottom with a Float; and a live Bait is better than a dead one, and that way, though the Pearch be the worst Bait, yet he'll live longest on the Hook; and is to be baited thus, *viz.* having cut off his Fin on his Back, without hurting him, with a sharp Knife, betwixt the Head and the Fin on the Back, cut or make an Incision, or such a Scar as you may put the arming Wire of your Hook into it, with as little bruising or hurting the Fish as possible, and so carrying your arming Wire a-long his Back, into or near the Tail of your Fish, betwixt the Skin and the Body of it, draw out the Wire or Arming of your Hook at another Scar near his Tail, then tye him about

about it with Thread, but no harder than of necessity to prevent hurting the Fish. And some use a kind of Probe to open the way, for the more easy entrance or passage of your Arming or Wire : And thus bait your ledger Bait for Pike, and keep it a foot from the bottom ; for a Pike will not so soon take any Bait on the Ground, as if it swim about a foot or more from the bottom.

To bait a Frog for the Pike, do it thus ; viz. put your Arming Wire in at his Mouth (which you may do betwixt *May-day* and the end of *August* ; for afterwards his Mouth closes up) and out at his Guills, and then, with a fine Needle and Silk, sow the upper part of his Leg with only one stitch to the arming Wire, or tye the Frogs Leg to the upper joint of the Wire. Use him gently, and perform your operation neatly, and he'll live the longer on your Hook.

Hooks for the Pike.

§ 9. There are several sorts of Pike Hooks both for Snap, and Pouch or Trowl ; your Spring hooks are excellent for Snap, and strike sure, yet the ordinary plain Snap-hook will as often miss as hit. Of Pouch-hooks there are many fashions, some with a round bent, almost after the Figure of a Pearch-hook, which may be good ; but there are another sort having a sloping bent outwards,

turning

turning a little inward under the Beard, yet withal, bending towards the Lead at the point of it, which point must be very sharp, which is the better Hook ; the single Hook strikes as sure, and is as good for the Trowl, if not better, than the double Hook, only for a great Bait, the double Hook is best.

There are two or three sorts of double Hooks, besides that of the Snap, some of them are flat, and are bent back to back, another sort there is that is more sloped, and the bents closer together, others there are that have a round bent much after the form of the Snap, which must always have a full bent, and very large.

Hooks used for ledger Baits, with live Fish, are not leaded, but rather shorter than the other, and the Wire hath usually more joints ; but all other Hooks are neatly leaded on the Shank ; let them be made of well temper'd Steel , that will rather break, than stand bent.

Lines for the Pike.

§ 10. The Trowling-line ought to be strong, and either of green or Sky-coloured Silk, and thirty yards long, but the Line for Snap may be about ten yards long ; next unto Silk fine Spun, Hemp Yarn Dried Green, or Sky-colour, 4, 5 or 6 fold neatly Twisted ; but for a ledger Bait Shoemakers Thread well Twisted is good enough. Let your Lines always
be

be dried immediately after you have used them. Snap Line must be stronger than the Trowling Line. As for the managing of the Line and fitting it for your sport, you may winds it upon a Roll that turns upon a Ring of Iron, with your Finger in it, having no more in your Hand than you make use of at present; so that if occasion be be you may unwind it at your leisure.

The Rod or Pole for the Pike.

§ 12. The Pole should be about 3 yards and a half long, and made either of Cane, dried Withy Bark't Fir, or dried Hazle, with a Ring at top for the Line to run through, and the Pole must be stronger for Snap than Trowl: for Trowl you may take off you Hazle top, and cut on a Ring, and use it, and so it will serve either for Pikes or other Fish.

How to Bait the Hook, and play the Bait at Trowl.

§ 12. Your Baits being ready, take a couple of Hooks at least with you, and you may Bait them before you set out, especially in cold Weather: The way then to Bait your Hook for Trowl is thus, *viz.* first thrust your Wire into the Mouth of the Fish quite through his Belly, and out at his Tail, some have besides the Wire a Knitting-needle on purpose, but

but if the first joint of the Wire be stiff and strong, it may very well be done with that; the point of the Hook must be even with the Belly of the Bait, for if it hang on either side, it may hinder and check the Pike, who will probably lay his Mouth upon it, for when he chops cross the Fish, he may be pricked, and so leave the Bait; when you have so put through the Fish, then tye the Tail of the Bait fast to the joint of the wire with strong Thread, which will both make it hang straight on the Hook, and preserve it from outward violence, for if it be not well fastned, the Weeds will soon tear it down to the Guills, and so separate the Hook from the Bait; some fasten it with a Needle.

The very best and chief way of fastning your Hook to the Line is with a Swivel.

How to Trout.

§ 13. Thus fixed drop in your Bait first even before you, then cast it on each side to find him, and let the third throw be before you into the middle, afterwards cast about all places where you conceive your Game lies, or any where you can Fish without Annoyance of Weeds, Roots, &c. for if the place be Weedy, &c. you cannot cast out so far, but only drop in the Bait, here and there by the sides, and in Holes that are clear and deep. The Weeds are very troublesome and great
Enemies,

Enemies; for if the smallest bit of Weed hang on your Hook or Bait, a Pike will be very squeamish to Gorge it.

Having cast out a fair throw, it may be 12 or sometimes 20 yards, (which may easily be done if the River requires it,) let it first have a little time to sink, then feel it by drawing gently towards you; for a Pike often takes it at first sight before it get to the bottom, and if you snatch it hastily, you both discourage him and deprive your self of your expected sport; after you have given it an easie motion towards you, let it have the liberty sinking again, then draw it slowly and softly towards you, for if you jerk it quickly and hastily, he has not time to lay hold on the Bait; for he's so quick-sighted that he'll often shoot himself from the farthest sides, and at a great distance, towards your Bait; when the Bait comes near the Bank, then play it longer there, first deep, for the deeper the better, if cold Weather, afterwards raise it higher and higher by degrees, till you have it so near the top that you see it glister; then take it out, not hastily, because he often takes it near the top.

When a Pike is once stir'd he'll lye watching for the Bait, and catch greedily at it, if he does not see you; therefore keep at a little distance upon the Bank; for they'll often take it at the very top, and sometimes leap out of the Water at it, but then they are so affrighted that they'll bite no more.

Cast

Cast not your Bait above once in one and the same place, for they are so greedy, that they commonly embrace the first opportunity to lay hold on the Bait.

Some Trowl, keeping the Bait at least a Foot, by a Float, from the bottom, but that is better for a Ledger Bait, because of the Weeds ; neither is it good to Trowl without a Pole, by casting your Bait with your Hand ; when he has taken your Bait, he'll run to his hold, and there lie till he has pouch'd it, and then range about for more ; then hook him with a small jerk, and give him Line, and make your Pleasure to your content.

If he takes the Bait greedily at bottom, and marches up the Stream with it, or strike cross the River towards his hold, he will then probably lie still a little time while he is pouching, as you may feel him check and tag at it, from which place, if he goes quick, you may let him alone a little longer, for you may come to lose all for want of 2 or 3 minutes forbearance ; if he hath lain still a while the second time, and then runs with it, then draw your Line straight, and with your Pole give him an easy stroke, and so feel him by degrees, till you come to see him, but if he be furious and resist much, let him have Line enough, and give him his full swing ; he'll be very angry at first, till pacified by losing his Strength.

If he be large, he'll be strong and unruly,

X perhaps

perhaps (for Madness) leap out of the Water as soon as prick'd, but if small and light, you'll scarce feel him.

You must be cautious in Landing a great one, for if the River be broad, and your Line short, you may easily lose him; for he'll launch out with such Violence, that though he cannot break your Line, yet he'll tear out his hold, or own Entrails, if he be there hung.

If he take the Bait at top, and runs fiercely with it into the deep, and there lie still for some time, and you perceive that he does not pouch it, your Remedy for that, is to stir him a little, and make him run, and be more eager of it, then after he hath lain still, and runs with it again; there is no danger of losing that Fish: For when they leave it, they commonly throw it up the first time they lie still: Sometimes he'll take it again after he hath left it, and run to his hold, and play with it more than he did at first, and after all leave it. A Fish that takes it most greedily at first, and carries it farthest, does notwithstanding often forsake it; the only way to come quit with such, is to use the Snap.

When you have bit, and the Fish goes down the Stream with it, 'tis commonly a small one; but on the contrary, if he fails slowly upwards with the Bait, it's a sign of a good one. For greater Fish bite more calmly and moderately than the lesser; for the small ones snatch and run away with it without

out any Care or Deliberation, but old Fish are more wary and cunning; they are sooner taken by a Line laid for them all Night than by Trowling. When the Water is clear and not very deep, you may see him rise at it and take it, so you may see the Bait glister as it lies cross his Mouth; you may then see when he hath pouched, and know your time to strike.

When you have first stricken him, you must be sure to have your Line ready and slack, that he may take as much liberty as he will; for when he finds himself trapan'd with the Hook, he'll use all his Might and Cunning to get loose; as you feel him come easily towards you, you may be still drawing, till you feel him make Resistance again, then you may let him have his swing 'till his Fury is over, then gather your Line to you again, till he starts away, and if you can get him to the top, it will the sooner tire him: For the more he strives and throws himself from you, the sooner he'll be weary; after this manner, by drawing him up, and letting him loose again, you may tire him, and tame him, 'till you bring him to your Hand; then go not unadvisedly to take him out by the Back, or Tail, but take him by the Head, and put your Fingers into his Eyes, (which is the fastest hold) but not into his Guills, lest your Fingers be injured with his Bites,

which are venomous ; but if you have a
Landing-hook, then you may easily and se-
curely use that.

*Ipse mihi plando ; nam Stulta
è face populi,
Hic scripsisse feret me bene,
C' ille male.*

F I N I S.

This Paragraph should have been
added after Chapter I. Section
10. Viz.

To make excellent Glews for Angling Rods
in some cases, as also for all manner of
Joiners Work.

§ 11. Take scumm'd Milk, which has stood
so long that no more Cream will arise from
it, scum it very clean, and set it over the
Fire in a Leaden Pot, letting it boil a little,
and if any Cream arise, take it off: Then put
into it a sufficient quantity of Glew, cut it
into small bits, which will soon melt; boil it
into a body that it may neither be too thick,
nor too thin, (for in this boiling lies much
Art) then take it from the Fire, and use it as
other Glew.

Observe, That, first, This Glew binds be-
yond belief, and will not be subje&t to resolve
with any ordinary moisture of the Weather,
because the curdy part of the Milk, freed from
its Oil, is joined with the Glew. Secondly,
That you take care it bnrn not to the sides of
the Pot, for then it will be deprived of its
Strength; to prevent which, (both in its first
making, and after melting of it) you had best

both make and melt it in *Balneo Marie*, so will you prevent burning, and by that means you may more safely boil it to what body you please, without danger of hurting the Glew. For in making any Glew it should boil as leisurely as possible. This hath been often experimented to be an excellent Glew.

Monsieur Lemery tells us, that if you mix Quick-lime and Linseed-oil together, and what you Glew with it, dry in the shade, that it will become as hard as Iron, and not resolve either by the heat of fire, or moisture of Water. And a Country Joyner, once told me, That if one pour some Water on some Stones of Quick-lime, until they are well quenched, and the Ebullition ceaseth, and then decant the Water, and therewith boil very leisurely your Glew, that 'twill make an exceeding strong Glew.

Linseed-oil is good to anoint Hazle Angle-Rods, once in 2 or 3 Years with.

THE TABLE.

NOTE, That c. signifies Chapter,
ter, and s. Section.

A Angling at float	c. 28.
At Dub-fly	c. 34, 35.
At Running-line both in clear and muddy Waters	c. 27.
At top with a Worm	c. 29.
In the Night	c. 30.
Rules for Ground and mid Water Angling	c. 31.
With a Ledger Bait	c. 32.
With a Natural fly	c. 33.
With a Minnow for Trout	c. 36.
For Pike with a Minnow	c. 37. c. 41.
With Trowl for Pike	ibid.
With Snap for Pike	ibid.
With Snare for Pike	c. 37. 41.
For an Eel by Bobbing, Brogling, or Snigling	c. 22. s. 5, 6.
For an Eel with Night-hooks	c. 30.
For an Eel at Ledger Bait	c. 32.

The Table

A

A Sb-grub
Ant-fly
Ash-fly

C. 4. f. 14.
C. 4. f. 19.
C. 4. f. 31.

B

B Acon
Blcak
Black berries
Blood
Bags
Baits
Bobs
Bark-worm
Bull-head
Barbel
Bream
Brandling
Robbing for Eels
Brogling for Eels
Beetle
Black-bee

C. 4. f. 37.
C. 25.
C. 4. f. 28.
C. 4. f. 17. C. 2. f. 9.
C. 3. f. 16.
C. 4. C. 7. f. 11. C. 3. f. 16.
C. 4. f. 9. 10.
C. 4. f. 14.
C. 4. f. 22. C. 26.
C. 19.
C. 18.
C. 4. f. 3.
C. 22. f. 6.
C. 22. f. 5.
C. 4. f. 25.
C. 4. f. 39.

C

C Od-bait
Cadish worm
Case-worm
Creeper
Canker-worm

{ C. 4. f. 11, 12, 13. C. 3. f. 16.
C. 4. f. 26.
C. 4. f. 8.
Cricket

The Table

Cricket	c. 4. f. 25.
Cheese	c. 4. f. 29.
Carp	c. 16. to dress c. 39.
Cub and Chevin	c. 21. c. 33.
Clap-bait	c. 4. f. 10.
Conger	c. 22. f. 1.
Cherries	c. 4. f. 28.

D

Dock-worm	c. 4. f. 15.
Directions general	c. 7.
Dace and Dare	c. 20.
Dew-worm	c. 4. f. 2. c. 27. f. 3.
Dub-fly	c. 34. c. 35.
Dibbing	c. 33.
Depth of Water to try	c. 3. f. 13.
Dressing of Fish	c. 39.

E

Eyes of Fish	c. 4. f. 34.
Eels	c. 22.
Earwigg	c. 4. f. 38.

F

Fish-ponds	c. 38.
Fern fly or Fern-bud	c. 4. f. 40.
Float-Angling	c. 28.
Flag-worm	c. 4. f. 15.
Floats	c. 3. f. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. Fly

The Table

Fly-Natural to Angle with	C. 33.
Fly-Artificial	C. 34. C. 35.
Fishes general Haunt	C. 7. f. 7.
Flook and Flounder	C. 24.
Frogs	C. 4. f. 35.
Feeding Fish	C. 7. f. 8. c. 38. f. 5.
Fish how to dress	C. 39.
Fly to make	C. 34.

G

G entles	C. 4. f. 16.
Grain	C. 4. f. 18.
Graſhopper	C. 4. f. 25.
Green-drake	C. 4. f. 32. c. 35.
Garden-worm	C. 4. f. 2.
Grayling	C. 12.
Gudgeon	C. 15.
Gilt-tail	C. 4. f. 3.

H

H air	C. 2.
Hooks	c. 3. f. 1, 2, 3, 4, C. 41. f. 9.
Hornets and Humble-bees	C. 4. f. 20.
Hawthorn-fly	C. 4. f. 33.
Haunt general of Fish	C. 7. f. 7.

L

L amprey	C. 4. f. 23. C. 22. f. 1.
Lines	C. 2

Leading

The Table

<i>Leading Lines</i>	C. 3. f. 10, 11, 12. C. 27.
	C. 28. C. 31.
<i>Line Cases</i>	C. 3. f. 15.
<i>Loach</i>	C. 4. f. 22. C. 26.
<i>Lip-berries</i>	C. 4. f. 27.
<i>Ledger-bait</i>	C. 32. C. 41. f. 8.
<i>Lob-worm</i>	C. 4. f. 2.

M

M aggots	c. 4. f. 16.
Minnow	c. 4. f. 22. c. 26. c. 36.
Marsh or Meadow Worm	c. 4. f. 4.
Mulberries	c. 4. f. 28.
Moth	c. 4. f. 36.
Millers Thumbs	c. 26.

N

N^{Et}
Night Angling

o

Oak-worm	c. 4. f. 8.
Oak-fly	c. 4. f. 31.
Ointments	c. 6.
Oat-cake	c. 4. f. 29.

P

P *Afes*
Plummer c. 5:
c. 3. f. 13.
Pannier

The Table.

<i>Pannier</i>	c. 3. f. 18.
<i>Palmer-fly or Worm</i>	c. 4. f. 8.
<i>Pide</i>	c. 4. f. 23.
<i>Prike</i>	c. 4. f. 30. c. 23. c. 37. c. 39. c. 41.
<i>Pearch</i>	c. 13.
<i>Pope</i>	c. 14.
<i>Periwinkle</i>	c. 4. f. 42.
<i>Penck</i>	c. 26.

R

R Ods for Angling	c. 1.
<i>Raspberries</i>	c. 4. f. 28.
<i>Receipts</i>	c. 6.
<i>Ruff</i>	c. 14.
<i>Roch</i>	c. 20.
<i>Running-line and Worm</i>	c. 27.
<i>Red-worm</i>	c. 4. f. 3.

S

S Heeps Blood	c. 4. f. 17. c. 7. f. 9.
<i>Salmon</i>	c. 11.
<i>Salmon Spawn</i>	c. 4. f. 21.
<i>Snails</i>	c. 4. f. 24.
<i>Stone fly</i>	c. 4. f. 32. c. 35.
<i>Seasons proper for Angling, or not</i>	c. 8. c. 9.
<i>Swivel</i>	c. 36.
<i>Snigling for Eels</i>	c. 22.
<i>Shrimps</i>	c. 4. f. 43.
<i>Snare</i>	c. 37.
<i>Seven-eyes</i>	c. 4. f. 23.

T

The Table

T

T Rowling	C. 37.	C. 41.	S. 13.
T Trouts		C. 10.	
Tag-tail		C. 4.	S. 5.
Tench		C. 17.	
Twatchel	C. 4.	S. 2.	

U

U Mber	C. 12 ⁹
--------	--------------------

W

W Hetsone	C. 3.	S. 14.
Worms	C. 4.	S. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7.
Worms to bait	C. 7.	S. 11. C. 27.
Wooll-bed		C. 4. S. 8.
White-grub, or White-bait	C. 4.	S. 9, 10.
Wasps	C. 4.	S. 20.
Water-cricket and Water-louse	C. 4.	S. 26.
Woodcock-fly	C. 4.	S. 31.
Withy-bark	C. 3.	S. 16.

Names

Some BOOKS Printed for William
Battersby, and Sold at his Shop
at Thavies Inn Gate, near St.
Andrews Church in Holbourn.

CASES for the Recovery of the Diffenters to
the Communion of the Church of England.
Written by some of the most Learned and Eminent
Divines of the City of London, the Second Edition.

Precedents of Conveyances. Written by the
Right Honorable Sir Orlando Bridgeman,
Kt. and Barr. some time Lord Keeper of
the Great Seal of England, the Third Edition,
with Additions.

Modern Reports: To which is added References
in this Second Edition.

The Assize of Bread, in 4°.

Dr. Sparks Devotions, in 8vo. newly Printed.
Bishop Wilkins's Sermons.

Ars Clericalis, or the Art of Conveyancing ex-
plained, in 2 Vol. 8°.

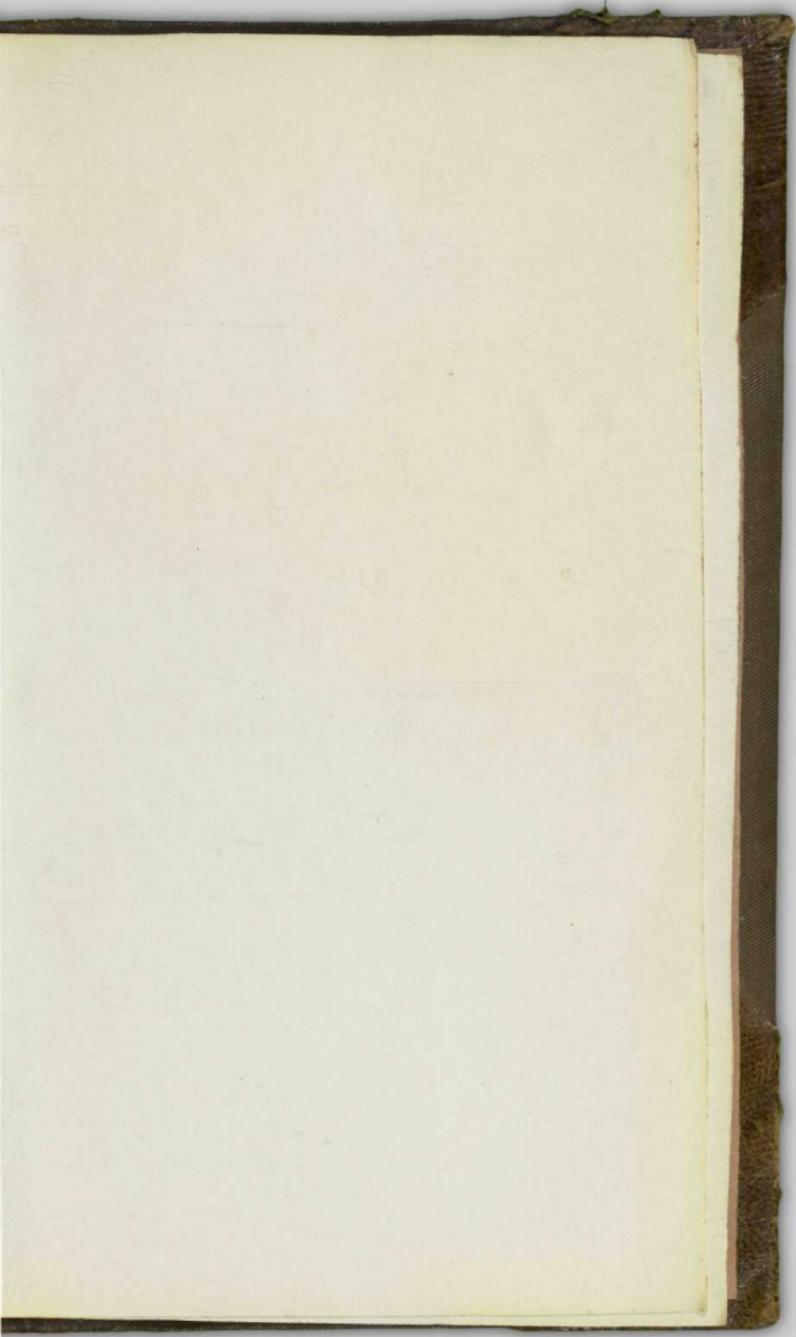
Ward's Gagers Practice.

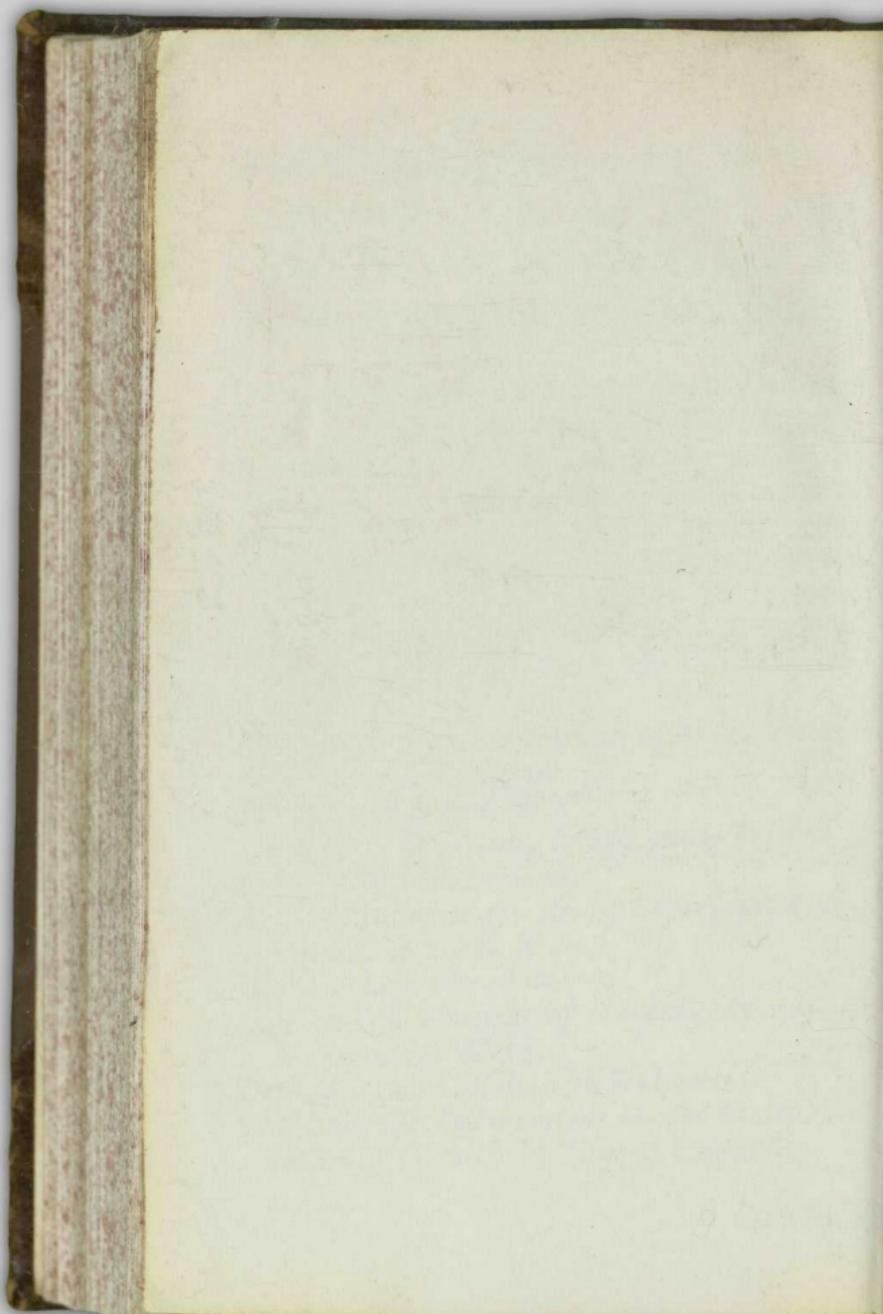
Lightbody's Elements of Gaging, by way of
Supplement to Ward.

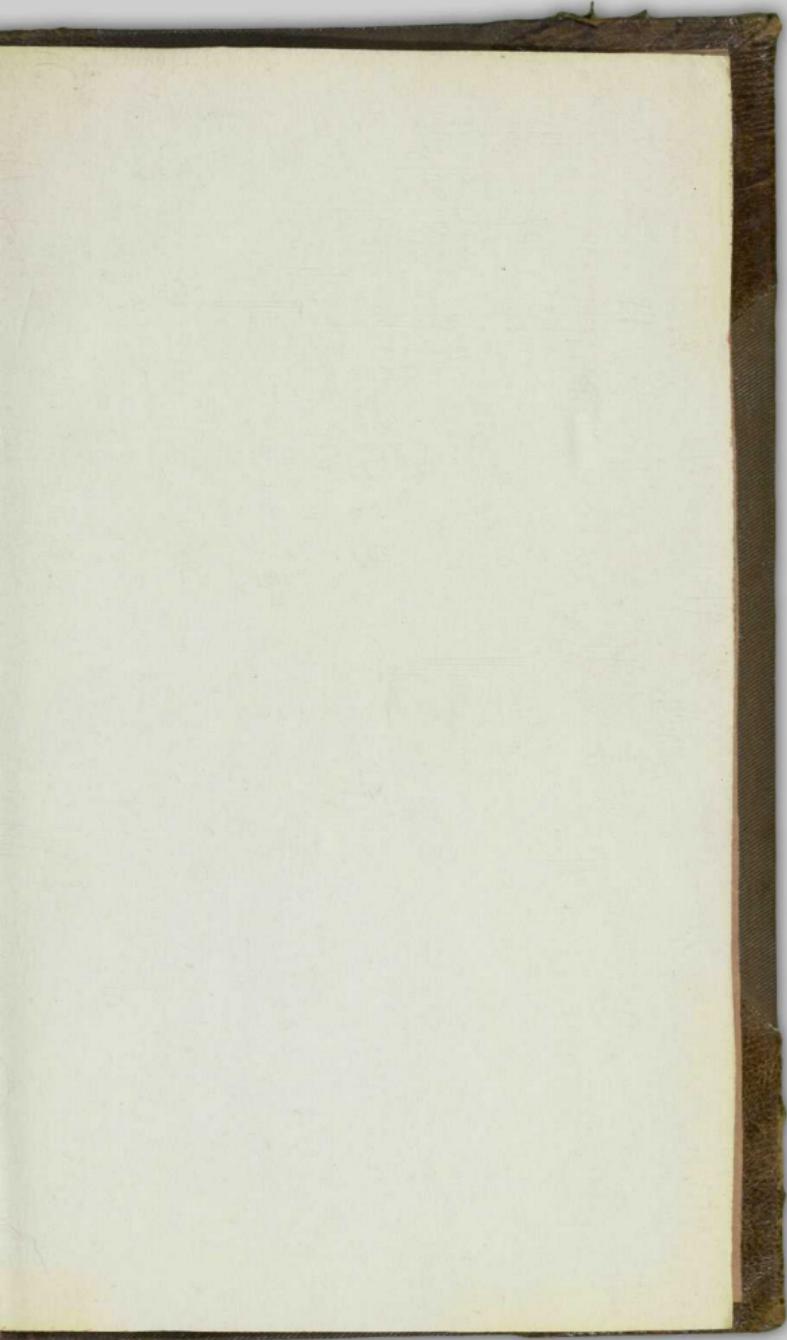
Don Quixote in 2 Vol. with Sculptures.

Washington's Observations on the Ecclesiasti-
cal Jurisdiction of the Kings of England.

Consett









SP SH 437 CS2 1700

